

FTD-ID(RS)T-1515-80



# FOREIGN TECHNOLOGY DIVISION



ELEMENTS OF DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

bу

Ye. S. Venttsel'





Approved for public release; distribution unlimited.

81 3 17 179

IN FILE COPY

4

والمراجع والمحافظ والمراجع والمتاجع والمراجع

# UNEDITED MACHINE TRANSLATION

FTD-ID(RS)T-1515-80

2 February 1981

MICROFICHE NR:

FTD-81-C-000040

ELEMENTS OF DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING.

By: Ye. S./Venttsel'

English pages: 311

(ラリ)

Source: Elementy Dinamicheskogo Programmirovaniya, Publishing House "Nauka", Moscow, 1964 1-174.

Country of origin: USSR

This document is a machine translation

REquester: FTD/TQF

Approved for public release; distribution

unlimited.

THIS TRANSLATION IS A RENDITION OF THE ORIGINAL FOREIGN TEXT WITHOUT ANY ANALYTICAL OR EDITORIAL COMMENT. STATEMENTS OR THEORIES ADVOCATED OR IMPLIED ARE THOSE OF THE SOURCE AND DO NOT NECESSARILY REFLECT THE POSITION OR OPINION OF THE FOREIGN TECHNOLOGY DIVISION.

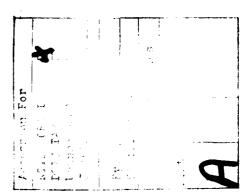
PREPARED BY:

TRANSLATION DIVISION FOREIGN TECHNOLOGY DIVISION WP-AFB, OHIO.

FTD- ID(RS)T-1515-80

Date 2 Feb 19 81

14/221



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

U. S. Board on Geographic Names Transliteration System	111
Annotation	2
Preface	3
§ 1. Task of Dynamic Programming	6
§ 2. Principle of the Step by Step Construction of Optimum Control	17
§ 3. Task About the Gain of Altitude and Velocity	25
§ 4. Problem of the Selection of the Fastest Path	50
3 5. Continuous Task of Plotting of Optimum Route	60
§ 6. General Formulation of the Problem of Dynamic Programming. Interpretation of Control in the Phase Space	7 4
§ 7. General Formula Recording of the Solution of the Problem of Optimum Control by the Method of Dynamic Programming	87
8 8. Task of Distributing the Resources	102
§ 9. Examples of the Tasks About the Distribution of Resources	123
\$10. Modifications of the Task About the Distribution of Resources	150
Ill. Task About the Distribution of Resources With the Enclosure of Income Into the Production	161
\$12. Other Varieties of the Task of Distributing the Resources	183
§13. Distribution of Resources With the Aftereffect	224
314. Tasks of Dynamic Programming With the Nonadditive Criterion	246

§15.	Stochastic Tasks of Dynamic Programming	270
§16. the Co	Example Stochastic Task of the Dynamic Programming: ombined Fire Control and of Exploration	283
Refer	ences	310

U. S. BOARD ON GEOGRAPHIC NAMES TRANSLITERATION SYSTEM

Block	Italic	Transliteration	Block	Italic	Transliteratic
A a	A 4	A, a	Рр	Pp	R, r
6 <b>6</b>	5 6	В, Ъ	Сс	Cc	S, s
8 8	B .	V, v	Τт	T m	T, t
Гг	r :	G, g	Уу	<b>у</b> у	U, ů
Дд	Дд	D, d	Фф	Φφ	F, f
Еe	E .	Ye, ye; E, e*	X ×	X x	Kh, kh
ж ж	Жж	Zh, zh	Цц	Цч	Ts, ts
3 з	3 ;	Z, z	4 4	4 4	Ch, ch
Нн	И и	I, i	ய ய	Шш	Sh, sh
ЙЙ	A a	Y, y	Щщ	Щщ	Sheh, sheh
Нн	K R	K, k	Ъъ	<b>3</b>	tt
A 7	ЛА	L, 1	Н ы	M w	Y, у
Paragra	Ми	M, m	ь	<b>b</b> •	t
Н н	Н н	N, n	Ээ	э,	E, e
<b>3</b> o	0 0	0, 0	Юю	10 xo	Yu, yu
Пп	17 n	P, p	Яя	Яя	Ya, ya

\*ye initially, after vowels, and after ъ, ъ; e elsewhere. When written as e in Russian, transliterate as ye or e.

### RUSSIAN AND ENGLISH TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

Russian	English	Russian	English	Russian	English
sin cos tg ctg	sin cos tan cot	sh ch th cth	sinh cosh tanh coth	arc sh arc ch arc th arc cth	sinn_; cosh_; tann_; coth_; sech_;
sec cosec	sec csc	sch	sech csch	arc sch arc csch	csch-1

Russian	English
rot	curl
lg	log

AGE 1

ELEMENTS OF DYNAMIC PROGRAMMANJ.

Ye. S. Venttsel'

FAGE 2

Page 2.

Annotation.

Synamic programming - recently amargent and intensely developing section of mathematics, which gives aethods for the solution of important practical problems. Discussion deals with planning/gliding of production or other processes when control by them is realized by a multistage path in view or these complexity. To such tasks can be attributed, for example, the selection of the most advantageous profile/airfoil for laying out the railway line (decomposed into the serias/row of sections), the selection of the best sizes/dimensions of the steps/stages of sultistage rocket and many others.

In this book for the ILSE TIME in the Soviet literature is done the attempt to accessibly present wasts ideas and methods of dynamic programming.

The hook is of interest to the wide circle of the workers of science and production, and also for all persons, developers of contemporary science interesting.

Page 3.

Preface.

In the book is given the elementary presentation of the method of dynamic programming which is considered as the general method of the construction of optimum scatter by different types of physical systems. The book is intended for the engineers, the economists and the scientific workers of the same specialties, which are occupied by questions of planning/yllding, and also by the selection of the rational parameters on tecanical devices/equipment. The author did not place to himself by was wask of giving strict and consecutive presentation of the mathemat\_ca\_ aspect of method, and he attempted to make him clear and available ful the wide circle of practical workers, who do not have special matnesatical formation/education and interested mainly in the direct use/application of a method to their tasks interesting. This target decermined by itself the style of the presentation accepted: the book barely contains strict proofs; the explanation of the principles or metaol is conducted with the support to the multiple practical tasks and the examples of which many are led to the concrete/specific/actual numerical result. Tasks and examples are undertaken from the most varied regions of practice; in the presentation are stressed the general/common/total features, which make it possible to decide by their similar methods.

FAGE 4

Page 4.

Ĉ.

The mathematical apparatus, used in the book, is simple and nowhere it exceeds the limits of the course of advanced calculus, set forth in all VTUZ

[#iyae. technical educational institution], and for the most part it does not require even this and is reduced to the simple arithmetic and algebraic operations.

However, for the conscicus mastering of material is required the known stress/voltage of thou, here by somewhat unusual ones for the inexperienced reader can seem the used with the presentation general formulas; however, the sense of these formulas and figuring in them designations is in detail explanatual in the text. For the understanding of two latter/last garayraphs (§§ 15 and 16) is required the acquaintance which can elementary concepts of the probability theory.

The dismantled/selected at the book specific problems intended are selected very simple that the cumbersome calculations would not shield the entity of method. In plactice, as a rule, it is necessary to be encountered with the more complex problems for solving which it is necessary to draw contemporar, electronic computational engineering. Keeping in mind the most for the composition of machine

algorithms, the author for the elongition/extent of the entire book uses the standard logic circuit of the construction of the process of step by step optimization and the standard sequence of formulas, which facilitates programmin, rol EVISM (electronic digital computer).

the author conscictsly normals a sinself by the examination only of the discretized problems of agrammic programming with a finite number of steps/pitches manulast aside the limiting cases, which correspond m-- and to the unimated decrease of the length of step/pitch. However, the discinct mastering of the idea of method on the elementary tasks can substantially facilitate to reader, who desires to obtain more intimate anowheape, further study of object/subject on the scre solid managements/manuals.

Ye. Vanttsel'.

FAGE

Page 5.

#### § 1. rask of dynamic programming.

Dynamic programming (or, otherwise, "dynamic programming") is the special mathematical apparatus, which permits implemention of optimum planning/gliding or the centrolled processes. Under "those controlled" are understood the processes to course of which we can to one or the other degree afrect.

didely-known close attention, given by contemporary science to questions of planning/gliding in all regions of human activity. Most general problem of optimum (Last, planning/gliding is placed as follows.

Let be assumed to the realization certain action or the series of the actions (is shorter, "operation"), which pursues the specific target. It does request itself: wow it is necessary to organize (to plan) operation so that it would be most afficient, i.e., in the best way satisfied the stated become it requirements?

so that stated problem of optimum planning/gliding would gain quantitative, mathematical character, it is necessary to introduce

into the examination certain numerical criterion W, by which we will characterize quality, success, examples of operation.

value W. depending on the Character of the decided task, can be chosen by different methods. For example, during planning/gliding of the activity of the system of industrial enterprises as criterion W can be (according to the Chromestances) selected the total yearly volume of production or the met revenue; the criterion of the efficiency of the work of transport system can be, for example, general/common/total goods resigns turnover or the mean cost/value of the saipment of the ton of road.

Page i.

The criterion of the efficiency of the bombing raid can be, for example, average/mean area of the caused destruction either an average number of affected of jects, or the cost/value of the reducing works which it is necessary to furfill opponent.

denerally the criterion of entitionary in each specific case is chosen on the basis of the purposerul directionality of operation and task of research (what element or control is optimized and for which).

rask of rational planning/yelling - to select this method of crganizing this system of operations in order to become maximum (or the minimum) some criterion \( \). It as the criterion is undertaken such value whose increase to us in productible (for example, income from the group of enterprises), then in they attempt to become maximum. If, on the contrary, value = it is producable to reduce, then it they attempt to become the minimum. It is obvious, the task of the minimization of criterion easily is reduced to the task of maximization (for example, of sign change of criterion). Therefore subsequently in the examination of the tasks of planning/gliding in the general/common/total setting we will frequently speak simply about the "maximization" or criterion 4.

Let us give now quantitative, mathematical posing of general problem of optimum planting/glading.

There is certain physical system 5 whose state in the course of time varies. Process is contaction, i.e., we have the capability to a certain degree to affect its course, choosing at its discretion the another control U. With the process is connected certain value (or criterion) W, which depends on the used control. It is necessary to select this control U so that the value W would become maximum.

Contemporary mathematical science has available the whole

arsenal of the methods, which make it possible to solve the tack of optimum control. Among them special position occupies the method of dynamic programming. The special character of this method in the fact that for finding the optimum control the planned/glide operation is divided into the series/lost of consecutive "steps/pitches" or "stages". Respectively the very process of planning/gliding becomes "multistage" and is developed consecutively/serially, from one stage to the next, moreover each time is optimized control only at one step/pitch.

Page 7.

Some operations naturally rail into the stages; in others this articulation is necessary to pullurin artificially.

Let us consider an example "logically multistage" operation. Let be planned/glided the activally or certain system of the industrial enterprises

 $\Pi_1, \Pi_2, \ldots, \Pi_n$ 

for cartain period of time  $T_{\sigma}$  was consists of m of economic years (Fig. 1.1).

In the beginning of person T for the development of the system of enterprises are selected scan wasic means K; furthermore, the

DOC = 80151501 FAGE 10

functioning enterprises give some income, which is realized at the end of each year in the folm of pule/clean gain.

In the beginning of each result year (i.e. at moments/torques  $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_l, \ldots, t_m$ ) is produced financing the entire system of enterprises, moreover for each or than is selected some share of the means, available at this time at the disposal of the planning/gliding organ/control.

Let us designate  $x_i^{(j)}$  the sum, separated in the beginning of the i year in the share of entaryrise  $\Pi_{f}$ 

Is raised the question: now it is nacessary to distribute on the enterprises initial capital K and incomes entering so that toward the end of the period of planning/jiming I total income from the entire system of enterprises would be maximum?

The formulated task is the tirical task of multistage planning/gliding.

Let us look, are such they can be approaches to the solution of this problem.

FAGE A1

Fig. 1.1.

Kay: (1). y year.

Page 3.

Let us assume that the distribution of means on by 1-th the step/pitch of operation is carried out, i.e., we selected the specific control  $U_i$ :

$$U_i = (x_i^{(1)}, x_i^{(2)}, \dots, x_i^{(k)}). \tag{1.1}$$

Formula (1.1) is read as follows: control  $U_i$  on by 1-th step/pitch lies in the fact that we isolated to enterprise  $P_1$  of means  $x_i^{(1)}$  to enterprise  $P_2$  - means  $x_i^{(2)}$  and so rotth.

Jsing widely used terminology, control  $U_l$  it is possible to visualize as vector in a  $\kappa$ - graduated space whose components are equal to  $x_l^{(1)}, x_l^{(2)}, \ldots, x_l^{(k)}$ .

Let us consider entire set of controls (allocated resources)

$$U_1, U_2, \ldots, U_m \tag{1.2}$$

at a steps/pitches of cperation as a of vectors in a k- dimensional space. The criterion of efficiency work multistage operation, as which we did select total include up a of years, does depend on the entire set of controls (1.4):

$$W = W (U_1, U_2, \dots, U_m). \tag{1.3}$$

Is raised the question: as to saluct control at each step/pitch, i.e., as to distribute seans, so that the value & would take maximum value?

The posed by us based on specific example problem easily can be generalized.

Let be planned/glided the Operation, which falls to m of consecutive steps/pitcles or stayes. In the beginning of each (i-th) stage it is necessary in a speciment scanner to select available parameters

$$\mathbf{x}_{i}^{(l)}, \mathbf{x}_{i}^{(2)}, \cdots$$

set of which

$$U_i = (x_i^{(1)}, x_i^{(2)}, \dots)$$

forms control in the i staye.

Page ).

As it is necessary to solect the set of the controls

$$U_1, U_2, \ldots, U_m$$

so that certain value W, walls on it, would become the maximum:

$$W = W(U_1, U_2, \ldots, U_n) = \max ?$$

The method of dynasic projection, waxes it possible to produce this optimum planning/glidin, by step, optimizing in each stage only one step/pitch.

optimum solution is not the only possible. The task of planning the sultistage processes in the principle dumits another solution - direct, with which all steps, priches are joined into one.

Actually/really, let us complus: criterion W as function from the elements of control at each step/pitch:

$$W = W \left( x_1^{(1)}, x_1^{(2)}, \dots; x_2^{(1)}, x_2^{(2)}, \dots; \dots; x_m^{(1)}, x_m^{(2)}, \dots \right)$$
(1.4)

This function of many arguments can be traced to the maximum, as such, without the necessary unstanded of the elements/cells of control mon the steps/pitches m. so, this it is necessary to find this value part of arguments  $x_i^{(j)}$   $(l=1,2,\ldots,m;j=1,2,\ldots)$ , with which function

FAGE 14

(1.4) reaches maximum.

It would seem, by what simples? It is necessary to use for the determination of maximum the crassical method: to differentiate function W of all arguments, to equate derivatives zero and to solve the obtained system of equations:

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{W}}{\partial x_1^{(1)}} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{W}}{\partial x_1^{(2)}} = 0, \dots;$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{W}}{\partial x_2^{(1)}} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{W}}{\partial x_2^{(2)}} = 0, \dots; \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{W}}{\partial x_m^{(1)}} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{W}}{\partial x_m^{(2)}} = 0, \dots (1.5)$$

dowever, this simplicat, as allusory.

First, when steps/littines audi, this method becomes very bulky. The task of solving the system or equations (1.5) in the simplest cases only proves to be easily solvable. As a rule, it is very complicated, and frequently it is easier directly grope the maximum of function (1.4), than to solve system of equations (1.5).

Fage 10.

Furthermore, the method indicated does not completely guarantee the determination of the solution ( Let us recall that by itself rotation/access of derivative lunc zero does not ensure the maximum of function, and is always required further checking. Moreover, this

method does not give the possibility to find maximum, if it lies/rests not inside, but on the possible values of the arguments (for example, see Fig. 1.2: the absolute maximum of function d(x) is reached not at points x1, x2, x3, where the derivative is a quar to zero, but at end-point x' of the region, in which is preset the function). So that even in those rare cases when system of equations (1.5) can be solved, finding absolute maximum requires the whole system of checkings, the more complicated, the greater the arguments in function.

Finally, it is necessar, to supplement that in the series/row of practical tasks function when the elements of control  $x_1^{(1)}$ ,  $x_1^{(2)}$ , ...;  $x_2^{(1)}$ ,  $x_2^{(2)}$ , ...;  $x_m^{(1)}$ ,  $x_m^{(2)}$ , ...; are the not continuously not changing, but discrete/digital values.

All these circumstances lead to the fact that the use/application of classical methods of analysis (or the calculus of variations) to the solution of the majority of the tasks of planning/gliding proves to be interestive: it reduces initially stated problem of finding the maximum to such secondary tasks which prove to be not simpler than the initial, but often also it is more complicated.

At the same time the squared of such many problems can be

DCC = 80151501

PAGE 10

substintially simplified, if we nevelop the process of planning/gliding step by stap, i.e., by the method of dynamic programming. The idea of method in the fact that finding the maximum of the function of many variable/alternating is substituted by the repeated finding of the maximum of function of one or small number of variable/alternating.

that in this case are applied mataods, it will be evidently from the following presentation.

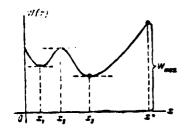


Fig. 1.2.

Fage 11.

§ 2. Principle of the step of ster construction of optimum control.

Thus, dynamic programming is stap by step planning/gliding of the multistage process, during anith in each stage is optimized only one scep/pitch.

At first glance it can seem that formulated idea is sufficiently trivial. Actually/really, that the hard odd: if it is difficult to optimize control immediately for the elongation/extent of entire operation, then to decompose it into the series/row of consecutive steps/pitches and to optimize separately each step/pitch. Not so whether?

not in any way assume that, cacosing control at one single step/pitch, it is possible to rorget about all others. On the contrary, control at each step/pitch must be chosen taking into account all its aftereffects in the rature. Dynamic programming these are planning/gliding rarangated, taking into account prospect. This not short-sighted planning "blindly" for one step ("come what may provided was now good"). On the

DOC = 80151501 FAGE

contriry, control at each study which is chosen on the basis of the interests of operation as a choice.

Let us illustrate the principle of "farsighted" planning/gliding based on examples.

Let, for example, he planded/glided the work of the group of heterogeneous industrial enterplaces for the period of time m of years and final task is obtaining the maximum capacity of the production of certain class C of consumers' goods.

In the beginning of paradules a specific supply of means of the production (machines, equipment), with the help of which it is possible to begin the production or goods of this class.

By "step/pitch" or "stage" of the process of planning/gliding is fiscal year. Let for us be in prospect the selection of the solution for the purchase of raw material, machines and the distribution of means according to the enterprises to the first year. During the "short-sighted" step by step pranning/pliding we would make the decision: to put a maximum quantity of means into the purchase of raw material and to release existing machines at full power, whereas approaching the maximum capacity of the production of class C toward the end of the first year.

PAGE 16

Page 12.

To what it can give the pramming/gliding? To the rapid wear of machine park and, as a result, to the fact that on the second year the production will fall.

During the farsighted planning/gliding, on the contrary, will be provided the actions, which ensure filling machine park in proportion to its wear. Taking into account such investments the capacity of the production of the basic goods C in the first year will be less than it could be, but will be provided the possibility of expanding the production during the subsequent lears.

Let us take another example. The process of planning/gliding in the checkered game also will full late the single steps/pitches (courses). Let us assume that the rigures are conditionally evaluated by one or the other number of glasses with respect to their importance; taking figure, we will this number of glasses, and giving up - we play back.

deasonably whether it wall, tainking over chess match on several steps/pitches forward, always approach at each step/pitch to win a

maximum number of glasses? It is obvious, no. This, for example, solution, as "to endow figure", hever can be profitably from a narrow point of view of only one course, but it can be profitably from the point of view of match as a whole.

Jo is matter, also, in any region of practice. Planning/gliding multistage operation, we muse choose control at each step/pitch, on the basis not of the narrow interests of precisely this step/pitch, but of the wider interests of operation as a whole, and hardly ever these two points of view colucide.

general rule: in the process of step of step management planning at each step/pitch must be accepted taking into account the future. However, from this rule there as an exception/elimination. Among all steps/pitches there is one, and an exception/elimination. Among all without the "caution to the future". What this is step/pitch? Is obvious, the latter. This ratter/rast step/pitch, single of all, can be planned/glided so that it as such would yield the greatest profit.

after planning optimal, cals litter/last step/pitch, it is possible to it "to attach" next-to-list, to this in turn, of prepaultimate, etc.

FAGE 21

Page 13.

turnel/run up in the opposite of the time direction: not from the beginning toward the end, but riom the end/lead at the beginning. First of all is planned/placed lacted/last step/pitch, but as it to plan, if we do not know how and end next-to-last? It is obvious, it is necessary to do different assumptions about that how ended next-to-last step/pitch, and for each of them to select control on the latter.

This optimum control, soldered and at the specified condition about that how ended the previous stay/prich, we will call conditional optimum control.

The principle of dynamic programming requires determination at each step/pitch of conditional opermum control for any of the possible issues of the processing step.

Let us demonstrate the ulaylaw of this procedure. Let be planned/glided a m- step operation, and it is urknown now ended (m-1) -th step. Let us do about this a series/row of "hypotheses" or "assumptions". These hypotheses we will designate:

$$S_{m-1}^{(1)}, S_{m-1}^{(2)}, \ldots, S_{m-1}^{(j)}, \ldots$$
 (2.1)

PAGE 22

We will be specified, that by letter  $S_{m-1}^{(l)}$  is not compulsorily designated one number: this can be and the group of the numbers, which characterize issue (m-1) -th of step but can be and the simply qualitative state of that physical system, in which proceeds the controlled process.

Let us find for each or assumptions (2.1) conditional optimum control on the latter/last (by the m-th) step/pitch. This will be that of all possible controls  $U_m$  at which attains a maximally possible value gained at the latter/last step/pitch.

Let us assume that for each or assumptions (2.4) conditional optimum control  $U_m^*$  on the large-rase step/pitch is found:

$$U_m^*(S_{m-1}^{(1)}); \quad U_m^*(S_{m-1}^{(2)}); \dots; \quad U_m^*(\hat{S}_{m-1}^{(f)}); \dots$$
 (2.2)

This means that the latter/last sump/pitch is planted for any issue of maxt-to-last.

Fage 14.

Let us switch over to prauming/jliding of following from the end/lad, next-to-last stap/pitch. Lat us again do a series/row of

PAGE 25

hypotaeses about that how end ad preparalltimate ((m-2) -th) the step:

$$S_{m-2}^{(1)}, S_{m-2}^{(2)}, \dots, S_{m-2}^{(k)}, \dots$$
 (2.3)

Let us raise the question: not it is nacessary to choose for each of these hypotheses conditional optimum control at (m-1) -th the step?

It is obvious, it must be caused so that it, together with the already selected control at the latter/last step/pitch, would ensure the maximum value of criterion m ar two latter/last steps/pitches.

In other words, for each of uppotnesss (2.3) it is necessary to find this conditional optimum consider on (m-1) -th step  $U_{m-1}^*(S_{m-2})$ , so that it, in conjunction with although obtained conditional optimum control  $U_m^*(S_{m-1})$ , would give a maximally possible prize at two latter/last steps/pitcles.

It is obvious, toward (m-1)-mu to step/pitch thus accurately it can be connected (m-1)-th and so rorth up to the quite latter/last (from the end/lead) 1st step/pitch from which the process begins.

The first step/pitch, in constast to all others, is planned/glided somewhat ctass wise. Since we usually know, from what begins the process, then for us is no longer required to make hypotheses about state in an\_ca we begin the first step/pitch. This

state to us is known. Therefore, taking into account that all subsequent steps/pitches (the znu, the 3rd, etc.) are already planned (conditionally), to us it remains simply to plan the first step/pitch so that it would be optimum taking into account all controls, already accepted in the best way by any subsequent steps/pitches.

rhe principle, placed as the Lasis of the construction of such solution (to seek the always optimum continuation of process relative to that state, which is achieved/leached at the given moment) they frequently call the principle of the optimum character (see [1]).

The general/common/total explanation of the method of the construction of the optimum occurron by the method of dynamic programming which was given in two present paragraph, in view of quite its generality can seem by incomprehensible. Therefore the following paragraphs (§§ 3-5) we will inducate to the solution of the specific problems on which let up try to give to him more intelligible interpretation. Subsequently, into § 6, we again will return to the general/common/total formulation of the problem which will prove to be clearer against the background of the already dismantled/selected specific examples.

FAGE 25

Page 15.

§3. Task about the gain of a turuse and velocity.

programming, is the task about was optimum climb and valocity flight vehicle. From this task we begin presentation of practical procedures of dynamic programming, moreover for the purpose of systematic clarity the conditions of tank wall us to the extreme simplified.

Task consists of the ICLICWLMY. The aircraft (or another aircraft), which is found on negating and which has velocity  $V_0$ , must be raised to base altitude  $H_{\rm RMM}$ , and its velocity is led to preset valua  $V_{\rm ROM}$ . Is known the fuel consumption, required for lifting the apparatus from any height  $n_4$  on any another  $H_2>H_1$  at the constant velocity  $V_1$  is known also the fuel consumption, required for an increase in the velocity figure  $A_{11}$  value of  $V_1$  to any other  $V_2>V_1$  at the constant/invariable begun  $n_2$ .

It is necessary to find the optimina clint and velocity during which general/common/total rest consumption will be minimum.

DOC = 80151501 FAGE 26

The solution we will construct is follows. For simplicity let us assume that entire process of the yain or altitude and velocity is divided into the series/row or consecutive steps/pitches (stages), and for each step/pitch allocate and allocate and height or only velocity.

de will be depict the scare of aircraft with the help of the point on certain plane VOH, where the abscissa represents the velocity of aircraft V, and ordinate - its height H (Fig. 3.1).

The process of the displacement of point S, which represents the state of aircraft, from the language state  $S_0$  into final  $S_{\text{non}}$  will be depicted on plane VOH as correctly stepped proken line. This line (trajectory of the motion or point S or plane VOH) will characterize control of the process of the year of altitude and velocity.

Page 16.

It is obvious, there are many possible controls - many trajectories on which it is absolute to translate point S from  $S_{nm}$ . It these all trajectories at as accessary to select that on which the selected criterion  $\Psi$  (rue) consumption) will be minimum.

In order to construct the solution by the method of dynamic

FAGE 21

programming, let us divide neight  $H_{\rm mon} = H_0$ , which must be assembled on aircraft, on  $n_1$  of the equal parts (for example, to six, see Fig. 3.2), and velocity  $V_{\rm mon} = V_0$ , unless at it is necessary to gather, on  $n_2$  of equal parts (for example, to signe). Let us divide the process of the gain of altitude and velocit, thus the single steps/pitches and we will consider that for one stap/parch the aircraft can either increase height by value

$$\Delta H = \frac{H_{\text{WM}} - H_0}{n_1},$$

or velocity - to value

$$\Delta V = \frac{V_{\text{mon}} - V_0}{u_2}.$$

A number of parts  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$  into which its divided intervals  $M_{\rm min} = M_{\odot} V_{\rm mon} = V_0$ , fundamental value does not have and can be selected on the basis of the requirements for the accuracy of the solution of problem. Pair of numbers  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$  detailines by itself the total number of staps/pitches m of the multistage process of the gain of altitude and valocity

$$m=n_1+n_2.$$

PAGE 28

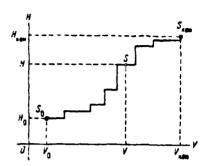


Fig. 3.1.

Page 17.

Of our case (Fig. 3.2) any trajectory will consist of fourteen steps/pitches:

$$m = 6 + 8 = 14$$

(as, for example, each of two trajectories, noted by arrows/pointers in Fig. 3.2). Being moved trum  $\mathbf{s}_{e}$  in  $S_{em}$  point S can move only over the horizontal and vertical segments.

Let us register on each of these segments (Fig. 3.3) the corresponding to it fuel consumption in some arbitrary units 1.

POOTNOTE 1. The digits, given in rig. 1.3, are salected from the systematic considerations and nothing in common with the real fuel

PAGE 20

consumption they have. ENDrOLINGE.

Any trajectory, which translates point S from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\text{non}}$ , is connected with the specific free consumption. For example, the trajectory, depicted as arrows/pointers in Fig. 3.3, gives the fuel consumption, equal to W=12+11+10+8+11+8+10+10+13+15+20+9+12+14=163 (conditional, units).

FAGE 30

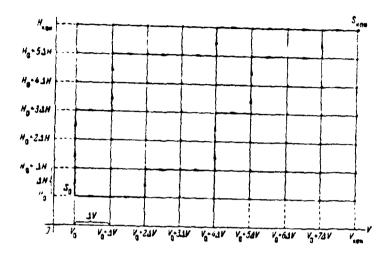


Fig. 1.2.

Page 18.

It is obvious, there is a very rarge number of different trajectories, which translate is of  $S_0$  in  $S_{xon}$ , and to each of them corresponds its fuel consumption W, we should of such all trajectories find optimum - that, on which the fuel consumption is minimal. It would be possible in your element saying to sort out all possible trajectories and in the final analysis to find optimum, but this - very bulky path. Auch more often it is possible to solve task by the method of dynamic programming on the steps/pitches.

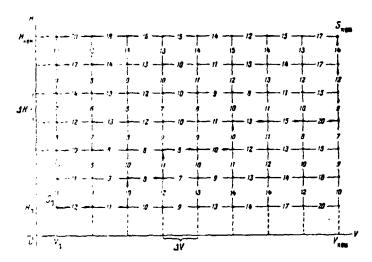
Process consists of m=1+ staps/ploches; we will optimize each

step/pitch, beginning from the latter. The final state of aircraft - point  $S_{\text{KOH}}$  on plane VOH - to us as present. The fourteenth step/pitch without fail must lead us anto this point. Let us look, whence we can move into point  $S_{\text{KOH}}$  at the routeenth step/pitch.

Let us consider the separately right upper angle of rectangular grid (Fig. 3.4) with end point  $S_{\rm kon}$ . In point  $S_{\rm kon}$ 

Git is possible to move of two aljacent points  $(B_1$  and  $B_2)$ , worsover of each - only in one sanner, so that the selection of conficional control at the latter/last step/pitch we do not have any - it is singular. If next-to-last step/pitch led us into point  $B_1$ , then we must move over the horizontal and expend 17 dust, of ruel; if we into point  $B_2$ , go on the vertical line and to expend 14 unity.

FAGE 37



Piq. 3.3.

## Page 19.

Lat us register these minimum (in this case simply unavoidable) fuel consumption in the special small circles which let us supply at points  $B_1$ ,  $B_2$  (Fig. 3.5). The recording by "17" in the small circle in  $B_1$  it indicates: "if we as rever in  $B_1$ , then the minimum fuel consumption, which translates us into point  $S_{\text{now}}$ , was equal to 17 unity". Analogous sense has a recording by "14" in the small circle at point  $B_2$ . The optimum constant, which leads to this expenditure/consumption, is marked in each case by the arrow/pointer, which emerges from the small calule. Gunder/rifleman indicates the direction over which we must now arrow tals point, if as a result of

.

cur previous activity they proved to be in it.

Thus, conditional crimum courts on the latter/last fourteenth step/pitch is found for any  $\{B_1 \cup E_2\}$  issue of the thirteenth step/pitch. For each of these issues it is found, furthermore, minimum fuel consumption due to ward or this point it is possible to move in  $S_{\text{mov}}$ .

Let us switch over to pranting/gliding of next-to-last (thirteenth) step/pitch. For this we should consider all possible results of prepenultimate (therefore, stap/pitch. After this step/pitch we can prove to be only in the or the points  $C_1$ ,  $C_2$ ,  $C_3$  (Fig. 3.6). From each such point we must thus optimum path in point  $S_{\rm cont}$  and corresponding to this geth minimum fuel consumption.

Fig. 3.4.

Fig. 3.3.

FAGE 34

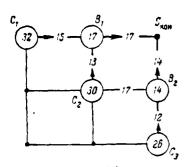


Fig. 3.6.

Page 20.

For point  $C_1$  there is no selection: we must be moved on the horizontal and expend 15+17=32 unity of fuel. This expenditure we will register in the small circle with point  $C_1$ , and optimum (in this case single) path from point  $C_1$  again let us mark by arrow/pointer.

For point  $C_2$  the selection exists: from it carried it is possible to go in  $S_{\rm max}$  through  $\sigma_1$  or chrough  $B_2$ . In the first case we will spend 13+17=30 unity of fuer; the secondly 17+14=31 unity. It means, optimum path from  $C_2$  is vertical (let us note this by arrow/pointer), and minimum rues consumption it is equal to 30 (this number we will register in the small circle with point  $C_2$ ).

Finally, for point  $C_3$  path into  $\mathcal{S}_{\kappa on}$  the again single: on the

vertical line: is bypassed 1. Into 12+14=26 unity; this value (26) we let us register in the small cardle with  $C_3$ , and by arrow let us mark optimum control.

Thus, passing from one count to the next from right to left and downward (from the end/lead of the process to its beginning), it is possible for each node Fig. 3.3 to select conditional optimum control at the following step i.e., the uniestion, which leads in  $S_{\rm con}$  with the minimum fuel consumption, and to register in the small circle with this point this minimum expenditure/consumption. In order to find from each point the optimum rollowing step/pitch, it is necessary to trace two possible to paths from this point: to the right and upward, and for each path to find the sum of fuel consumption per this step and although fuel consumption per this step and although fuel consumption per this step and although fuel from the following point, where is directed pointer tip. from two paths is chosen that, for which this sum is less (if sum the, are equal, it is chosen any of the paths).

thus, from each point ray. 3.3 (see page 18) is conducted the arrow/pointer, which indicates optimum path from this point (optimum conditional control), and in the small circle it is entered/written the fiel consumption, reached at the optimum control, beginning from this point to the end/lead.

FAGE 36

Sconer or later this process of the construction of conditional optimum controls is finished, after reaching starting point  $S_0$ . From this point as of any another, conducts the arrow/pointer, which indicates, where it is necessary to be moved in order to reach  $S_{\rm con}$  optimally. After this it is possible to construct entire optimum trajectory, being moved on the afterday/pointers, already from the beginning of process to its analysed.

Page 21.

Fig. 3.7 shows the final result of this procedure - optimum trajectory, which leads from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\rm kon}$  on the arrows/pointers, i.e., having from each point optimum continuation. This trajectory is noted by fatty/greasy small circles and tailtale counters. The number "139", which stands at point  $S_0$ , indicates minimum fuel consumption W\*, lass which it cannot be obtained in what trajectory.

Thus, stated problem is solved and optimum control of the process of the gain of altitude and velocity is found. It consists of the following:

on the first step/fitth to increase only velocity, retaining by constant/invariable height  $n_u$ , and to bring velocity to  $V_0+\Delta V$ :

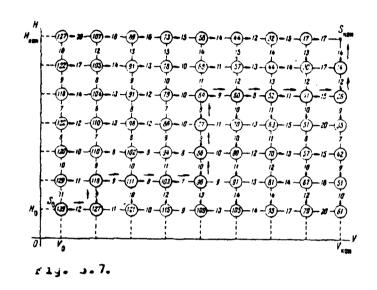
it the second step/pircu to increase height to  $H_0+\Delta H_0$ , retaining the valocity of constant/invariable:

at the third, fourth and rarea staps/pitches to again gain

speel, until it becomes equal to va+4 AV;

at the sixth, seventh and enguta steps/pitches to gain altitude and to bring it to  $H_0+42H$ ;

at the ninth, tenth, elevants and twelfth steps/pitches to again gain speed and to bring it to preset finite value  $V_{\rm non}$ ;



Page 22.

at the latter/last two sters/riccnes (the thirteenth and the fourtheath) to gain altitude to ressal value  $H_{\rm kont}$ .

It is not difficult in a number of examples to ascertain that the obtained control is actually/leading optimum, i.e., which in any other trajectory, which leads or  $\omega_0$  in  $S_{\text{non}}$  the fuel consumption will be more.

Task examined here of the optimum gain of altitude and velocity is the simplest example in which they frequently demonstrate the

basic idea of dynamic programmany. Actually/really, in our simplified setting the problem greatly adding is solved to the end/lead with the nelp of the simplest methods. This is explained by the following circulastances. First, at each ster/pitch for us it is necessary to choose not more than between two versions of control (" to gain altitude" or "to gain specu", Interdatamination of conditional optimum control at each point elementarily and is reduced to the selection of of more advantageous of these two paths. In the second place, in our task it is very simple to produce the numbering of steps/pitches, beginning from the eni/lead. Actually/really, each trajectory consists of one and the sale number of steps/pitches, and latter/last, naturally, proves to be that which by overcoming one (horizontal or vertical) step/pitch and ultractly, gives into point Skon; with next-to-last - that, alter which to point Skon there remains only one step/pitch and, etc.

This simplified formulation of the problem does not completely correspond to reality. Actually flight vehicle can to gather (often it gathers) height and velocity simultaneously.

Let us try (furthermore in the shaplified form) to pose the problem where will be provided this simultaneous set, and let us look, to what complications of methodology this will lead.

that, besides the already examine paths (upward and to the right), from each node of grid would be reasible another path along the diagonal of rectangle (simultaneous jain of altitude and velocity). Let us supply the appropriate rues consumption along each diagonal (Fig. 3.8).

Ahat does differ this anageam from the previous (see Fig. 3.3)?

Not only the presence, except two as possible earlier controls, the still third "along the diagonal".

Page 23.

This liagram differs the less precise numbering of the steps/pitches: in the limits of each rectangle from the lower laft angle into the upper right it is possible to pass both for two steps/pitches ("upward-to the right" or "to the fight-upward") and for one step/pitch - along the diagonal. Inscrepts in the new task is unsuitable this simple principle of consecutive sorting nodes, as what we took earlier (according to a number of steps/pitches, which remained to the end/leag), and it is necessary to take some another.

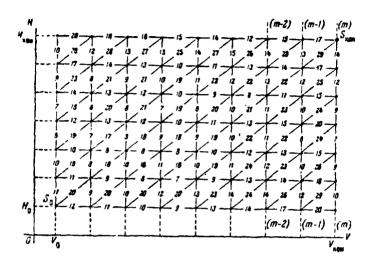
Let us agree to lakel nodes not according to a number of steps/pitches, which remained to the end/lead, but according to the

PAGE #2

500 = 80151502

sign/criterion of any cocrumate. As this coordinate it is possible to take, for example, "remainder/residue of velocity",  $V_{\rm kon}-V$ , which must be "reached" for the remaining time. With this numbering of points the "latter" till we that stap/pitch which will translate point S with the vertical stanger line (m-1)-(m-1) (Fig. 3.8) into point  $S_{\rm kon}$  (this latter/last "step/pitch" can consist of several steps/stages); by "next-to-mst ones" - that which will translate point with the straight line (m-2)-(m-2) to the straight line (m-1)-(m-1), and so forth.

Fig. 3.9 examines the sample/specimen of the optimization of process with this numbering of the sceps/pitches (are shown crly two latter/last steps/pitches).



rij. 1.8.

Page 24.

Conditional optimum control, as waller, it is shown by arrows/pointers. Let us clarify the procedure of the construction of control.

If we proved to be at any rount on the straight line (m)-(m), passing through  $S_{\text{con}}$  that the only possible (the very same and optimum) path of output into point  $S_{\text{con}}$  — but vertical line. This path is shown in Fig. 3.9  $\mu_f$  arrows/pointers of lengthwise entire straight line (m)-(m); the corresponding fuel consumption are shown in the small circles.

Let us assume now that as a result of the process of the gain of altitude and velocity we proved to be on the straight line (m-1)-(m-1). We will sort out of the straight line all points on top downwardly. If we proved to be in the fulce peak, then path into point  $S_{\text{row}}$  hence single (horizontal) is bypassed it in 17 unity of the fuel (we write/record 17 in the small circle and we place horizontal arrow/pointer). The pass to the following point - the second on top. From it to the straight line (m)-(m) - three paths. The first path - upward - to the right - is bypassed into 13+17=30 unity of fuel; the second - along the inagonal - in 29 unity; the third - to the right - upward - in 31 inity. We choose diagonal path, we mark by its arrow/pointer, and the corresponding consumption - 29 unity - we place in the small circle. For the third point we are on top again congruent/equate three paths:

upward (and further aroug the dragonal): 12+29=41 unity of fuel:

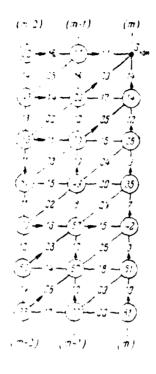
with respect to the diagonal (and further upward): 25+14=39 unity of fuel;

to the right (and further toy): 13+26=41 unity of fuel.

DOC = 80151502 FAGE 45

We choose optimum path - along this diagonal, we note by arrow/pointer, we write/reconsist in the small circle. For the following - the fourth on top - point on the straight line (m-1)-(m-1) optimum will be the path upward and so forth.

FAGE HL



614. J. 3. 3.

Page 25.

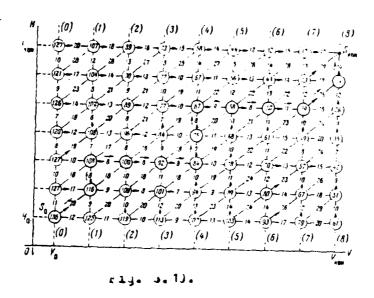
Fig. 3.10 gives the final results of the optimization of control of the gain of altitude and velocity under given conditions, indicated in Fig. 3.8. Optimum trajectory is as perore isolated with fatty/greasy small circles and resultate counters.

seing congruent/equatik, the opcimum trajectory, shown in Fig. 3.10, with that its given an ig. 3.7, we note that they are

distinguished not very not sandlys. As far as fuel consumption is concerned, then its values (130 and 13) entirely differ little from each other, and both controls can be considered in effect equivalent.

In the example examined as selected the method of the ordering of staps/pitches "on the auxilisa". Fals method is not completely necessary; it would be possible to label steps/pitches also in terms of the values of any another coordinate. As this coordinate could be with the equal success selected weight it. Perhaps, in our example the most natural "ordering" occurrate would be distance from  $S_{\rm kon}$ . deposited/postponed in parallel to the diagonal of basic rectangle (Fig. 3.11).

PAGE 48

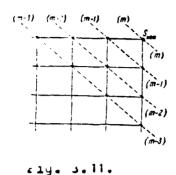


Page 26.

for reader one should  $u_1$  was as axarcise find optimum trajectory according to the data of Fig. 3.0, using that method of the adjustment of steps/fitches which is demonstrated in Fig. 3.11.

In the diverse tasks or the ujnamic programming where there is no natural distribution into the steps/pitches, the principle of this distribution and ordering or steps/pitches is chosen depending on convenience in the organization of computational process, taking into account to the required accuracy or the solution of problem. Is generally intuitively it is clear that with an increase in the number

of staps/pitches the accuracy or one solution grows. In some tasks it proves to be possible to cotain even limited solution with m->-; this solution can represent theoretical, and sometimes also practical interast; however, usually is is sufficient explain the structure of optimum control in the yearar/common/cotal, rough features; in this case there is no need to strongly increase a number of steps/pitches. The same with the practical realization of control most frequently fits nevertheless to stap back from the strictly optimum version which can prove to be difficultly to feasible. Therefore we will not fause on the maximum tasks of control, which appear with m->-, but we will be wounded to the examination of discrate/digital step by step draylar. This especially makes sense, that in many tasks of the aconomic planning/gliding (but we will give to similar tasks considerable attention) distribution into the steps/pitches not imposed from outsile, but it is logically dictated by the discrete/digital nature or the planning/gliding itself (ylane is comprised, for example, a, the pear, to the month, etc., and it does not vary continuously in the course of production process).



§ 4. Problem of the selection of the fastest path.

In the previous paragraph we considered in the simplest setting the tisk of the optimum gain or articule and velocity. Here we will consider similar in the type, but nevertheless differing scmewhat from it task of the selection or the fastest path of the point/item in another.

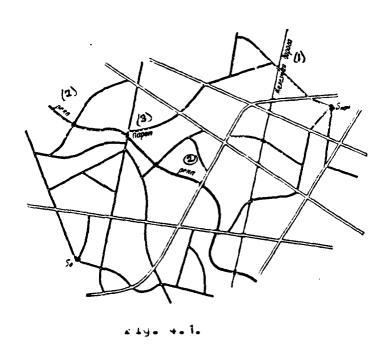
Page 27.

Task is placed in the rollowing manner. Let it be we should reach in the machine from point/item  $S_0$  to point/item  $S_{\text{non}}$  (fig. 4.1). Generally there is a whole series of possible versions of path. They are comprised of the sections of ways, not equivalent on the quality. Among them there can be, for example, the sections of the first-class asphalted highway, and also the less well-organized and

simply unimproved roads. Furthermore, on the path to us can be met the crossings and the passages on which the motion is detained.

Task lies in the fact that to salact this path from  $S_{\sigma}$  and  $S_{\rm con}$  which machine will pass for the machine.

Task at first glance is completely similar to that examined in the previous paragraph. However, it has some special features/peculiarities. In examples 3 3 we constructed the regular, rectainfular grid of the nones through which could pass trajectory.



Key: (1). Railroad. (2). river. (3). ferry boat.

Page 28.

In the new task which we examine now, the role of this grid of modes could play the logically noted "singular points" of the network/grid of ways - crossings and passages, on they were arranged/located too irregularly, and it is difficult "to order them on the steps/pitches". In order to approximately solve our task by the

method of dynamic programming, it is possible to introduce into it artificially certain "stage-up-stage character". For example, it is possible to divide distance of unitom  $S_0$  to  $S_{\text{non}}$  into m of equal parts length  $\Delta D=\Gamma/m$  (Fig. 4.2) and to consider that for each "step/pitch" of the process of unsplacement from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\text{con}}$  is surmounted the m part of distance 1 (in the direction  $S_0-S_{\text{con}}$ ). In other words, each "step/pitch" is displacement with one of the lines of support, perpendicular  $S_0-S_{\text{con}}$ . to the adjacent, the closer to  $S_{\text{con}}$ .

Dale process to the steps/pitches thus, we, naturally, must agree that the displacement from the step/pitch to the next is allowed/assumed only in the contribution (i.e. from  $S_0$  to  $S_{\rm cont}$  and not conversely); in other words, after the specific step/pitch is travelled, return conversaly, into the same band between two lines of support, is not allowed/assumed. This limitation occurs sufficiently to acceptable ones for the practice. Let us recall that in the task § 3 we net with even the some limitation; in the mode/conditions of climb and velocity was allowed/assumed the displacement over both axes only in the positive displacement. In the task of the selection of the fastest path that introduced by as limited (as a result of each step/pitch to be moved only "there", but to direction  $S_0 - S_{\rm cont}$  and not back ") is less rigid, since it functions only from one step/pitch to the next, not signal the step/pitch, and moreover, only

20C = 80151502

on one axis (in the case of necessity from this limitation it is possible to be freed, on in this case the solution strongly it is complicated).

Thus, let us assure that the path from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\rm con}$  is decomposed into a of the steps/pitches, in each or which the machine is moved with one of the lines of support (1)-(1) to the following in order

(i+1)-(i+1) (i=0, 1, ..., m).

The carried out by us names or support intersect road net at some points.

Page 29.

for the solution of problem to us must be known the time, required for the passage of each section of path, and also delay time on each crossing (passage). In Fig. 4.2 against each route segment is written the corresponding time of passage (in the minutes), and in the small circle in each crossing (passage) - latency of machine in this point/item.

According to a quantity of lines of support in Fig. 4.2 process of the displacement of machine from  $s_0$  in  $s_{\text{non}}$  we will share into seven steps/pitches (i.e. let us take a=7) and let us begin the construction of optimum pain from the latter/last (m-th) step/pitch.

resitions of machine at the moment of the termination of next-to-last (m-1) step/pitch. This will be by otherward (m-1) step/pitch. This will be by otherward (m-1) step/pitch, not each of which we must find conditional optimum control on the m step/pitch. In Fig. 4.2 these possible position are noted by small circle with the point inside. From each such position we must shade optimum (shortest on the time) path into point Show.

Let us consider first the first (on top) of the noted points - point A on the straight like (a-1,-(a-1)). From it into point  $S_{\text{xon}}$  (in the limits of the band of the mastep/pitch) conducts one-single path, which occupies on the time 10+2+1+5+10+2+5=35 (minutes).

the selection of this pain is conditional optimum control when the previous step/pitch led us late point A. Let us note in Fig. 4.2 this optimum path by black neavy line, and in point A let us display "flag" with registered with it durit 30.

Heavy line together with the rily they indicate the following: if, being moved from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\text{kon}}$ , we some fates they proved to be at point A, then of it we must move further over the noted by black line

FAGE 5

routs and on the achievement or point  $S_{\rm kon}$  of the expenditures of 35 minutes.

de pass to the following point (B) on the straight line (m-1)-(m-1). From it into point  $S_{\rm kon}$  conducts the one and only path, to which it is required 2+2+1+3+10+2+5=27 (minutes). Number 27 we also write/record on the final next to point B.

For point C the path again sangle and is continued 4+2+5=11 (minutes).

From point K in  $S_{\rm HOH}$  there are two paths: 3+3+4=10 (minutes) and 3+3+2+2+6=16 (minutes); of them the first - fastast; we note by its heavy line and we write/record minimum time (10) on the flag in point K.

EAGE #

poc = 80151502 Page 30.

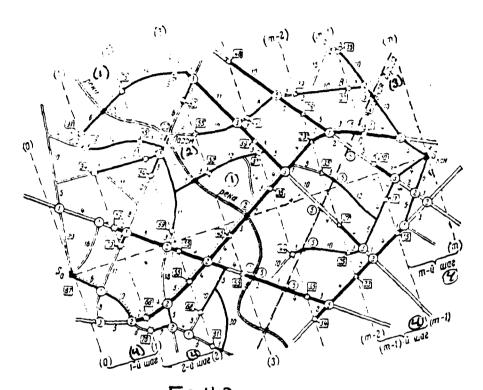


Fig. 4.2.
Kay: (1). river. (2). ferry wow. (3). Railroad. (4). m step/pitch.

Fage 31.

Continuing thus, we find for each point on the straight line (m-1)-(m-1) the optimum control at the m step/pitch.

After this is carried out, we pass toward planning/gliding of (m-1) step/pitch. Hypotheses about that, where can be located the

FAGE 58

machine of afterward penpenultimate (m-2) step/pitch, they are noted by triangles on the straight line (m-2)-(m-2).

For each of the noted points we must find conditional optimum control, i.e., this path with the straight line (m-1)-(m-1), which, together with the already optimized latter/last step/putch, gives the possibility to achieve  $S_{\text{sum}}$  for the minimum time. In older to find this conditional optimum control, we must for each point on the straight line (m-2)-(m-2) sort cut all possible transition would to the straight line (m-1)-(m-1) and time, required to this transition, sum with the minimum time of latter/last step/pitch, registered with the flag. From all possible paths is chosen that, for which this total time is minimal; path is noted by black line, and thus to which precorded on the flag in the corresponding point.

As a result of the cnall/nectork of such constructions, being moved step by step with one line of support to another, we finally will reach starting point  $S_0$ . For it we will determine optimum path to the straight line (1)-(1) and let us register the appropriate minimum time (87 minutes) on the line at point  $S_0$ . Thus, all data for the construction of optimum warm there are, since for each of the planned points (whatever faces we in it not they proved to be) is known the optimum continuation of path. In order to construct optimum

path from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\text{von}}$  it is necessary simply to be moved on the sections of ways, noted by near, rines. In Fig. 4.2 optimum trajectory from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\text{NOM}}$  is noted by heavy line with the dotted line.

Thus, stated problem about the selection of the fastast path between two preset points/items as solved.

Apropos of this task it is possible to express several considerations, which concern the selection of a number of steps/pitches during the construction of the solution by the method of dynamic programming.

Fage 32.

It at first glance seems that so that the solution would be more simply, it would be desirable have a little less steps/pitches. However, this not entirely thus. The larger/coarser the step/pitch, the more difficult it is to limit the optimum solution on this step/pitch, the more there is the versions of the displacement with the straight line to the straight line. In the extreme case, if we considered only one step/pitch (m=1), before its would arise the initial task of sorting all possible paths from So in Some in her entire complexity.

It does follow from these that it our specific problem it was necessary to still increase a number of steps/pitches, to do them, for example, not 7, but 20?

Also no ! An increase in the number of steps/pitches beyond some reasonable limits would only complicate the procedure of the construction of the sclution.

In the fact that the selected by is number of steps/pitches (m=7) is sufficiently reascurate, is possible to be convinced on the fact that for us was newhere necessary to sort out a large number of versions of transition with the straight line to the straight line these versions proved to be one, and rare three, and to find among them optimum was not two not difficult. If we strongly incrassed a number of steps/places, i.e., is excessive refined the sections of transition, them in the overwhelming majority of the cases with the straight line to the straight line would conduct one and only path, and no optimization it would be. As the final result we would construct the same oftimum trajectory, on by more complicated calculations.

§ 5. Continuous task of plotting of optimum route.

In § 4 was solved the task or piotting of optimum route from point/item  $S_0$  to point/item  $S_{con}$  and points/items were connected by some network/yrid or mays and path can run only on one of the ways of this discreta/discreta/discreta.

In practice can be get another situation - when finished road not there does not exist, but unsection or motion from each point on the plane can be chosen arbitrarily, for example in the limits of some angular sector  $\theta$  (Fig. 5.1). In this case for each point A on plane xOy is known the velocity of displacement from this point over any ray/beam AA' within the limits of sector  $\theta$ .

Page 33.

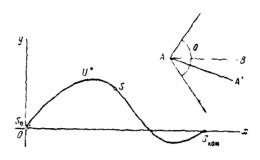
Task lies in the fact that to rime such trajectory U\*, which combines  $S_0$  and  $S_{\rm kon}$ , along which point 3 would pass from  $S_0$  in  $S_{\rm kon}$  within the short time.

Let us plan the diagram of the solution of this problem by the method of dynamic programming, rot simplicity let us assume that the sector  $\theta$  is symmetrical relative to line AB, parallel to the axis of abscissas, and that  $\theta < 180^\circ$  (Lactor is necessary in order to exclude

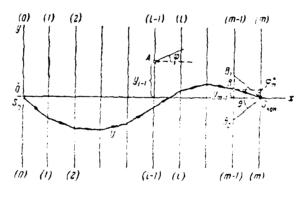
DOC = 80151502 FAGE 62

the displacements, "reverse" to the direction of the axis of abscissas).

Let us decompose distance  $S_{\text{MOM}} = S_0$  into m of equal parts, and the process of overcoming tall ulbrance - to m of the steps/pitches, each of which is transition also one of line of support, parallel to axis ordinates, to another, adjacent (Fig. 5.2).



cly. 5.1.



rly. 3.2.

Page 34.

If we take a number of stars/r iccoes m sufficiently large, then it is possible to assume that at each step/fitch the trajectory phase is straight-line. Task is required for each point A on the line of support (i-1)-(i-1) to determine the optimum angle  $\epsilon$  (in the limits of sector  $\theta$ ), at which must rate point A optimum trajectory, i.e.,

that but with which we must move from A in order to achieve  $S_{con}$  in the minimum time. If we the position of point A on the straight line (i-1)-(i-1) determine by its ordinate  $y_{i-1}$ , the conditional optimum control at the i step/pitch will be notion from point A at angle  $P_i$  toward the axis of the absolutes where  $P_i$  depends on  $Y_{i-1}$ .

$$U_i(y_{i-1}) = \varphi_i(y_{i-1}).$$

He will plan/glide the process of displacement, as always, from the latter/last (m-th) step/licch. Lat us assume that as a result of (m-1) step/pitch we proved to be at contain point B on the straight line (m-1)-(m-1) (Fig. 5.2). Made we must move further in order to prove to be at point  $S_{\text{mon}}$ ? It is obvious, on straight line  $BS_{\text{con}}$ . But direction of this motion not tot all positions of point B on the straight line (m-1)-(m-1) it is found within the permissible limits. In order to construct segment  $B_1B_2$  of the possible positions of point 3, whence it is possible, auximy our limitations, to arrive in  $S_{\text{con}}$  obviously, it is necessary to construct from point  $S_{\text{con}}$  the "inverted" sector  $\theta$ ; its formers will out off on the straight line (m-1)-(m-1) segment  $B_1B_2$ .

Thus, for each point 3 cutting off  $B_1B_2$  is found conditional optimum control - displacement ever straight line  $BS_{min}$  at angle  $S_m$  co the axis of abscissas, wanch dispends on ordinate  $S_{m-1}$  of point B:

$$\varphi_{m}^{\bullet} = \varphi_{m}^{\bullet}(y_{m-1}).$$

FAGE 65

Knowing the velocity or displacement from point B over this direction, we can find the minimum time of the execution of the latter/last step/pitch:

$$T_m^* = T_m^* (y_{m-1}).$$

Thus, for any point B calcue strangar line (m-1)-(m-1) conditional optimum control and collasponding to it conditional minimum time of the m step/pltca can be determined.

Page 35.

Lat us assign several values or crumata ym-:

$$y_{m-1}^{(1)}, y_{m-1}^{(2)}, \dots,$$
 (5.1)

and for each of them let us rime conditional optimum control and conditional minimum time:

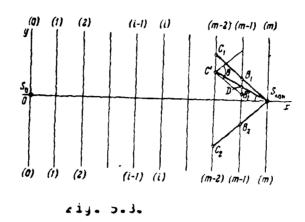
$$\varphi_m^*(y_{m-1}^{(1)}); \quad \varphi_m^*(y_{m-1}^{(2)}); \dots$$
  
 $T_m^*(y_{m-1}^{(1)}); \quad T_m^*(y_{m-1}^{(2)}); \dots$ 

If points  $y_{m-1}^{(i)}, y_{m-1}^{(i)}, \dots$  are set on outting off  $B_1B_2$  sufficiently fraquently, then it is possible to consider that the conditional optimum control and conditional manipum time are found for any value  $y_{m-1}$ .

Let us switch over to pranking/jliding of next-to-last (m-1) step/pitch (Fig. 5.3). Section  $C_1C_2$  of the possible positions of point S as a result of (m-2) step/pitch is also determined by the

300 = 80151502

minvarted" sector  $\theta$ : in crae. It to construct, it is necessary to continue straight lines  $S_{\text{NOH}}B_1$  and  $S_{\text{NOH}}B_2$  before the intersection with the straight line (m-2)-(m-2). Let us place in section  $C_1C_2$  the series/row of reference points and for each of them let us find optimum path in  $S_{\text{NOH}}$ . For point  $c_1$  this path is clear: it joes on straight line  $C_1S_{\text{NOH}}$ . Let us read this path by heavy line and it is computed corresponding to it full/local/complete time  $T_{m-1,m}$ . expended for the execution of the ratter/last steps/pitches.



Page 16.

This cime is equal to the sum of two times: time  $\ell_{m-1}$  of the displacement over cutting off  $C_1 S_1$  and of time  $T_m$  of displacement from  $S_1$  in  $S_{\text{non}}$  (but it was already calculated on the previous step/pitch). Analogously operating part from  $C_2$  in  $S_{\text{non}}$  goes on straight line  $C_2 S_{\text{non}}$ .

Let us take on cutting off  $C_1C_2$  any internal point C'. For this point path to the straight line (u-1)-(u-1) no longer single. Actually/really, after constructing sion point C' the sector of possible directions 6, we see that within the limits of this sector it is possible to select any rectrinear path, which leads from C' into one of the points cutting off  $B_1B_1$ . By what from these paths to

select? It is obvious, that pach  $C^*D$ , for which the total time, which goes to both latter/last  $Steps/_Fleehas$  ( $C^*D$  and  $DS_{ron}$ ). is minimal. Let us designate this minimum time  $T^*_{m-1,m}$  and let us note that it depends on ordinate  $y_{m-2}$  of paint  $C^*$ . Taking whole range of different positions of point  $C^*$  on outting off  $C_1C_2$  with ordinates  $y_{m-2}, y_{m-2}, \dots$  let us find for each of them optimum control  $2^*_{m-1}$  and minimum time  $T^*_{m-1,m}$  or the achievement of point  $S_{ron}$ :

$$\varphi_{m-1}^*(y_{m-2}^{(1)}); \qquad \varphi_{m-1}^*(y_{m-2}^{(2)}); \dots$$

$$T_{m-1,m}^*(y_{m-2}^{(1)}); \qquad T_{m-1,m}^*(y_{m-2}^{(2)}); \dots$$

After this is done, we pass toward planning/gliding of (m-2) step/pitch, etc.

As a result of the chain/network of such constructions for each point on any of the lines of  $\sup_{r \in S} \operatorname{def}(r)$  will be explained the conditional optimum control (is found the angle \*\*, at which it must pass optimum trajectory) and is determined corresponding to this control minimum time of the achievement of point  $S_{\min}$ .

After the process of openmization is led to point So, is constructed (already from the beginning toward the end) entire optimum trajectory, which roum back point goes at optimum angle \*\*.

Fig. 5.4 shows the result of the construction of optimum control by the method of dynamic group ramming. Optimum trajectory is roted by

heavy line with the dotted inne.

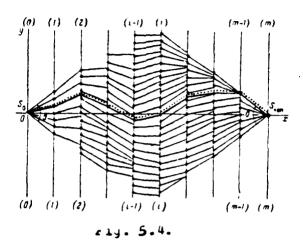
Page 37.

Let us note in conclusion that the described methodology of the construction of optimum trajector, completely does not depend on that, what precisely value is minimized - be it time T of displacement from S<sub>0</sub> into S<sub>now</sub>. Element the fuel consumption R or of costs/values of passage C, or even any criterion, selected depending on the character of the decluse plactical task. For example, with the packing of railway line it is possible to prefer that route which leads to the smallest expenditures or the smallest volume of eartheory. When selecting or missing trajectory can prove to be necessary minimize the launching seight or maximize velocity, etc.

Let us note also that the sector of possible directions  $\theta$ , which we for simplicity considered constant/invariable, can vary depending on the number of step/pitch or, in general, from the coordinates of starting point A. In some practical tasks it occurs, that direction the valocities at the initial member or into the final (or into both, etc.) are preset previously and vary cannot. This is equivalent to so that the sector of possible directions  $\theta$  in the vicinity of these points is degenerated into one straight line.

DOC = 80 15 1502 FAGE 70

leference lines (i)-(1),  $\omega_1$  which we shared process into the stages, completely must not  $\omega_2$  and straight lines, parallel to one of the axes: them are chosen,  $c_{\infty}$  the wasis of convenience in the construction of the solution.



Page 38.

If, for example, the task modes conveniently deciding not in the Cartesian, but in the polar occurrance system, line (i)-(i) they can be, depending on type the ranks, are selected in the form of light beam, which proceed from polar of (rig. 5.5) or in the form of the concentric circumferences (rig. 5.0). For example, Fig. 5.7 shows the schematic of planning/glidin, the output of rocket from point  $S_0$  on the earth's surface to the given point  $S_{\text{tot}}$  of outer space, carried out in the polar coordinate system. The polar coordinates of launcaing point  $S_0$  are present and equal to  $(R_p, \phi)$ . The conditions of the varticality of start narrow one sector of possible directions  $\theta$  at the first step/pitch to one straight line; the conditions for the present direction of final velocity  $v_{\text{tot}}$  set the same limitations on

300 = 80151502

FAGE 199

the latter/last step/pitch; at and intermediate steps/pitches of the limitations, superimposed in the sector or possible directions, they are derived/concluded from the physical considerations (for example, from the maximum permissible transverse transfers of rocket).

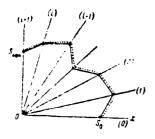


Fig. 5.5.

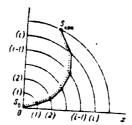
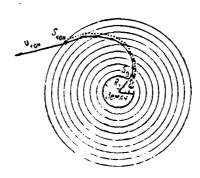


Fig. 5.6.



cly. 5.7.

FAGE 94

Page 39.

§ 6. Jeneral/common/total rolandation or the problem of dynamic programming. Interpretation or control in the phase space.

After is examined the sames/low of the specific problems of lynamic programming, let us give the general/common/total formulation of such problems and will reconstant in general form the principles of their solution. In this paragraph (and in the following after it § 7) for reader, familiar only with the elaments/cells of advanced calculus, it is necessary to clash with an not entirely customary for it recording of formulas and a somewhat unusual terminology. However, let us emphasize that the comscious mastering of precisely these paragraphs is very substantial for the understanding of the method: without this general/common/cotal approach will be difficult to see in the following presentation and larger than the set of diverse examples.

Let us consider following general problem.

There is certain physical system S, which in the course of time can wary its state. We can manage this process, i.e., in this or some other way to affect the state of system, to translate it of one state

FAGE 95

into another. This system s we want call the controlled system, and action, with the help of which we affect the behavior of system, by control.

with the process of changing the state of system 5 is connected some of our interest, which is expressed numerically with the help of criterion W, and it is recessar, to organize process so that this criterion would become maximum (minimum) 4.

FOOTNJTE 1. Subsequently for the wievity we will speak only about the maximization of criterion, large that the "maximum" in any event can be substituted to the "manimum". ENDFOOTNOTE.

Let us designate cur coutron (1. e. entire system of actions with the halp of which we we afrect the state of system S) of one letter U. Criterion W depends on this coutrol; this dependence we will register in the form of the rollmula

$$\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{W}(U). \tag{6.1}$$

Page 40.

It is necessary to find such control U\* ("optimum control"), during which criterian W reaches the maximum:

$$W^{\bullet} = \max_{U} \{W(U)\}. \tag{6.2}$$

COC = 80151502

FAGE ME

Recording max is read: "max\_mum of J", and formula (6.2) indicates:

## is maximum from the values which take criteria # during all

possible controls U.

Mowever, the problem of the optimization of control is not completely yet posed. Usuall, upon the formulation of such problems must be taken into consideration some conditions, superimposed on the initial state of system  $S_0$  and final state  $S_{\rm min}$ . In the simplest cases both these states are completely gleset (as, for example, in § 4, when it was necessary to translate truck from point/item  $S_0$  to point/item  $S_{\rm con}$ ). In other tables these states can be preset completely accurately, but it is only instituted by some conditions, i.e., are shown the region of the initial states  $\widetilde{S}_{\rm con}$  and the region of final states  $\widetilde{S}_{\rm con}$ .

The fact that the initial state of system  $S_0$  enters into region  $\widetilde{S}_0$ , we will write/record with the nelp of the accepted in mathematics "sign of inclusion/connection" E:

 $S_0 \in \widehat{S}_0$ 

it is analogous for the final state:

Sran F Sran.

raking into account initial and final conditions the task of optimum control is formulated as iollows: from many possible controls to find such control to allow translates the physical system S

DOC = 80151502 FAGE

from initial state  $S_0 \in \hat{S}_0$  . Into IIIIal  $S_0 \in S_{20}$  so that certain criterion W(U) would be converted into the maximum.

	Let	us	giv	e to	CO	ntroi	, r	೧೮೯೮೪	1 eo	uetrio	irte	erfret	tatio	n. For
this	for	us	it	is n	ece:	ssarı	ΕO	54 in e 1	inac	widen	our	custo	omary	geometric
rapra	sent	ati	io ns	and	l to	inti	صد ناد	:6 - u6	col	acapt	about	the	so-c	alled
"phas	<b>:</b>													
space	н													

Page 41.

The state of the physical system 5, which we manage, always can be described with the help of the or the other quantity of numerical parameters. Such parameters can be, for example, the coordinates of physical body and its velocity; a quantity of means, included into the group of enterprises; the number of grouping of the troops, etc. These parameters we will call the phise coordinates of system, and the state of system represent in the form of point S' with these coordinates in certain conditional phase space. A change of the state of system S during the control phase space. A change of the state of system S during the control phase space. The selection of control U indicates the selection or the specific trajectory of point S in the phase space, the specific law of motion.

Phase space can be different depending on a number of paraliters, which characterize the state of system.

met, for example, the state of system S be characterized only by the one parameter - coordinate x. Then a change in this coordinate will be represented as the displacement of point S along the axis Ox

(or on its specific section, if to coordinate x they are superimposed are some limitations). In this case phase space will be one-dimensional and is the axis of abscissas Cx or its section, and control is interpreted by the law of the motion of point S from initial state  $S_0 \in \tilde{S}_0$  into final  $S_{\text{con}} \in \tilde{S}_{\text{con}}$  (Fig. 6.1).

If the state of system s is characterized by two parameters  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$  (for example, the abscissa of material point and its valority), then phase space will be plane  $\mathbf{x}_10\mathbf{x}_2$  or its some part (if to parameters  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$  are superimposed limitations), and the controlled process will be represented as the displacement of point s from  $S_1\in \tilde{S}_2$  in  $S_{\text{kon}}\in \tilde{S}_{\text{kon}}$  over the spacefic trajectory on plane  $\mathbf{x}_10\mathbf{x}_2$  (Fig. 6.2).



Fig. 5.1.

Kay: (1). Region of the possible scaces of system (phase space).

Page 42.

If the state of system is characterized by three parameters  $x_1$ ,  $x_2$ ,  $x_3$  (for example, two coordinates and velocity), then phase space will be ordinary three-dimensional space or its part, and the controlled process will be depicted as the displacement of point S over space curve (Fig. 6.3).

If a number of parameters, suich characterize the state of system, is more than three, then geometric interpretation loses its graphic nature, but geometric terminology continues to remain convenient. In general, when the state of system S is described by n by the parameters:

$$x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$$

we will represent it as point 3 in the n-dimensional phase space, and control interpret as the displacement of point S from some initial

region  $S_0$  into final  $\widetilde{S}_{\rm con}$  over Gertain "trajectory", over the specific law.

In order to make clearer an rues of "phase space", let us return to the already examined specific problems which we solved in the previous paragraphs, and let us construct for each of them phase space.

In the task of the optimum yain of altitude and velocity (§3) the state of the physical system s (flight vehicle) was characterized by two phase coordinates - velocity V and with a height of H.

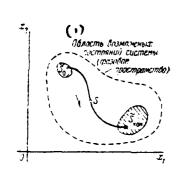
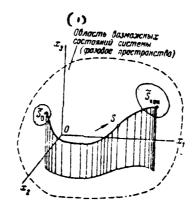


Fig. 6.2.



Page U.J.

Fig. 5.2.

Key: (1). Region of the possible states of system (phase space).

Pig. 6.3.

Key: (1). Region of the possible states of system (phase space).

Page 43.

Respectively phase space was two-ulmansicnal and was the phase plane VOH (more accurate, the rectangle, limited by abscissas  $V_{\rm o}$ ,  $V_{\rm kon}$  and ordinates  $H_{\rm in}$ ,  $H_{\rm kon}$ ). Optimum control was represented as the displacement of point S over the optimum crajectory on the phase plane. The

initial state  $S_0$  ( $V_{0}$ ,  $H_0$ ) and that state  $S_{\text{kon}}(V_{\text{kon}}, H_{\text{kon}})$ , they were completely determined and were two paints  $S_0$ ,  $S_{\text{kon}}$  on the phase plane.

In the task of the selection of the fastest path (§4) the physical system S was the truck which was to be translated from initial point  $S_0$  into final  $S_{\text{non}}$  within the short time. Here again the state of system was described by two parameters x and y (ordinary Cartasian plane coordinates), and the trajectory of point S on the phase plane was itself the causaly trajectory of the moving/driving point (truck).

The continuous task or plotting of optimum route, examined in \$5, on the setting and in the ulmension of space differs in no way from previous. Let us note that if the optimum rath ran itself not in the plane, but in the space (for example, the path of aircraft of one point/item in another), then phase space would become three-dimensional, but if in this case was optimized even the mode/conditions of a change in the valuatity - four-dimensional.

In all, until now, examples examined initial and final conditions  $S_0$  and  $S_{\text{con}}$  were the completely fixed points of phase space. It is not difficult to give examples of the tasks, where these states are the whole regions  $S_0$  and  $\widetilde{S}_{\text{con}}$  of phase space.

Assume, for example, we need to direct the combat guided rocket from some point  $S_0$  on the earth's surface into the vicinity of target. It is obvious, for this there is no necessity to direct rocket but the fixed point  $S_0$ , and it is sufficient so that it equid has present zone  $S_0$ , which surrounds the target, sizes/dimensions and form of which are determined by damaging effect of rocket. The state of rocket at each moment of time we will as representative point  $S_0$  in the six-dimensional phase space (three coordinates, three components of velocity). At the initial moment the coordinates of locket are present; the velocity components are equal to zero (point  $S_0$  is completely determined).

Page 44.

As far as final state is concerned  $S_{\text{non}}$ , than it is determined not completely: space coordinates must be within the limits of the preset zone  $\widetilde{S}_{\text{H}}$ , and to the components of velocity no limitations are imposed. Consequently, region  $\widetilde{S}_{\text{non}}$  in the six-dimensional phase space is limited on coordinates  $x_s$ ,  $y_s$  and is unconfined on coordinates  $V_s$ ,  $V_s$ ,  $V_s$ .

Let us assume now that the unscussion deals not with combat, but about the passenger recket; for it the touchdown point is completely determined, but on the velocity components are superimposed the

severe limitations; in this case region  $S_{\rm kin}$  substantially becomes narrow.

In the following presentation we will meet with a whole series of the practical tasks, where the initial state  $\mathfrak{F}_0$  and final  $S_{\rm con}$  are not points, but the whole regions of phase space.

Thus, let us formulate general problem of optimum control in the terms of phase space.

To find such control U\* (Optimum control), under the effect of which point S of phase space will move from the initial region  $\tilde{S}_0$  to finite domain  $\tilde{S}_{\text{KOH}}$  so that in this case criterion W will become maximum.

Stated general/common/total growless can be solved by different methods — far not only by the method of dynamic programming. Characteristic for the dynamic growlessing is the specific systematic method, namely: the process of the displacement of point S from  $S_0$  in  $S_{con}$  is divided into the series/low of consecutive stages (steps/pitches) (Fig. 6.4), and is produced the consecutive optimization of each of them, beginning from the latter.

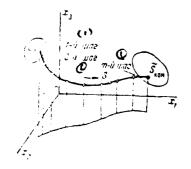


Fig. 6.4.

Key: (1). step/pitch.

Page 45.

In each stage of calculation is sought first conditional optimum control (under all possible assumptions about the results of the previous step/pitch), and then, after the process of optimization is led to the initial state  $S_0$ , again passes entire/all sequence of steps/pitches, on already from the beginning to the end/lead, and at each step/pitch from many conditional optimum controls is chosen one.

dowever, what do we gain with the help of this step-by-step calculation of the process of optimization? We win that the fact that at one step/pitch the structure of control, as a rule, proves to be more simply than for entire elongation/extent of process. Instead of

one time solving of complex problem, we prefer many times to solve problem relatively simple.

In this - entire entity of the method of dynamic programming and entire justification for its use/application in practice. If this simplification in the procedure of optimization from the distribution of process into the stages it does not occur, the use/application of a method of dynamic programming becomes meaningless.

§7. General/common/total formula lectring of the solution of the problem of optimum control  $L_{\ell}$  the method of dynamic programming.

In the previous paragraen we cormulated the general/common/total formulation of the problem of a landwis programming and it gave to this task geometric interpretation, alter posing it as the problem of steering of point in the phase space.

In the present paragraph we will attempt to register in general form not only setting, but also solution of the problem of dynamic programming. Are true, the rormalas, which we will obtain, they will by necessity take the very general/common/total, unspecific form, but for the understanding or the rurale these general formulas will prove to be useful.

00C = 80151503

FAGE 88

defore to begin the jeneral/common/total formula recording of the process of dynamic programming, so should make more precise the nature of criterion W, with some we caus far in no way dealt.

Page 46.

Let us note that in all examinel, until now, examples criterion W possessed one remarkable property: the value of this criterion, achieved/reached for entire process, was obtained by the simple addition of the particular values of the same criterion  $w_i$ , of achievements at the single steps/pitches.

Actually/really, general/common/cotal fuel consumption R to the gain of altitude and velocit, (see §3) was the sum of fuel consumption r, at the single steps/pitches:

$$R = \sum_{i=1}^{m} r_{ii} \tag{7.1}$$

the total time T of displacement of the point/item in another (see §4) was the sum of the times of overcoming single stages '.:

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^{m} t_i \tag{7.2}$$

and so on.

If criterion W possesses this property:

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i, \tag{7.3}$$

i.e. it is composed of the elementary values of the same criterion,

obtained at the single steps/piccues, then it is called additive.

In the majority of the practical tasks, solved by the method of dynamic programming, criterion was illuitive. If it in the initial formulation of the problem is not additive, then they try then to modify this setting or criteriou atself so that it would gain the property of the additivity (see fulther, §14).

and some most elementary ones raum those leading to additive.

Let us give setting and overall diagram of the solution of the problems of dynamic programming with the additive criterion.

Let there be the control plocess of the physical system S. separated on m of steps/pitcles (stayes).

Page 47.

At our disposal at each (i+tu) step/pitch is control  $U_i$ , by means of which we we translate system of the state  $S_{i+1}$ , of the achievement as a result (i+1) step/pitch, into her state  $S_i$ , which depends on  $S_{i+1}$  and selected by us control  $U_i$ . Thus dependence we will register as follows:

DOC = 80151503 FAGE 90

$$S_i = S_i(S_{i-1}, U_i),$$
 (7.4)

by considering  $S_i$  as the function of two arguments  $S_{i-1}$  and  $U_i$ 

Let us note that for applying the method of dynamic programming it is substantial so that the new state  $S_\ell$  would depend only on state  $S_{i+1}$  and control at i step/patca  $U_i$  and it did not depend on how system arrived into state  $S_{i+1}$  in this proves to be not then, then should be "enriched" the concept of the "state of system", after introlucing into it these parameters from the past, on which depends the future, i.e., to increase a number of measurements of phase space.

Inder the effect of controls  $U_1,\ U_2,\ \dots,\ U_n$  the system passes from the initial state  $S_{\mathbf{0}}$  into read  $S_{\mathsf{kon}}$ . As a result of entire process after m of steps/pitches is octammed the "income" or "prize"

$$\mathbf{W} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathbf{w}_i (S_{i-1}, U_i), \tag{7.5}$$

where  $w_l(S_{l-1}, U_l)$  - prize at the 1 step/fitch, which depends, naturally, on the previous state of system  $|S_{l-1}|$  and selected control  $|U_{l'}|$ 

Is preset the region or the initial states  $\mathfrak{S}_0$  and the final states  $\widetilde{S}_{\text{kon}}$ . It is necessary to select initial state  $S_n^* \in \widetilde{S_0}$  and controls  $U_1, U_2, \ldots, U_n$  at each step/pitch so that after m steps/pitches

system would pass into region  $\tilde{S}_{\text{non}}$  and in this case prize W became maximum.

Let us describe in general form the procedure of the use/application of a method of dynamic programming to the solution of this problem.

For this by us it will be necessary to introduce some new designations. We already designated # - prize within always of process:  $w_i$  - prize for the i ster/pitch. Since the process of lynamic programming is turneu/run up from the end/lead, for us it is necessary to introduce special assignation for the prize, acquired for saveral latter/last steps/pitches of process.

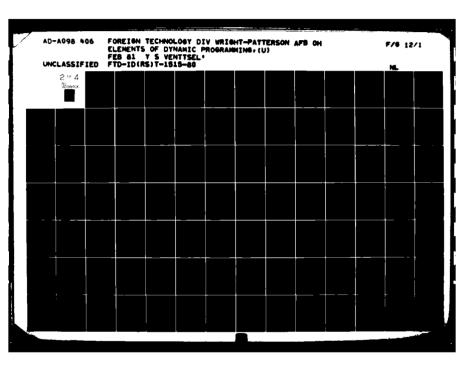
Page 48.

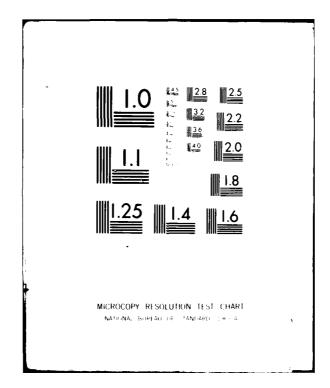
Let us designate:

"- prize for the latter/last step/picch.

 $W_{m-1,m}$  - prize for two latter/last staps/pitches.

 $W_{cont...,n}$  - prize for the latter (m-1+1) of step/pitch, beginning from the i-th and ending with the w-th.





It is obvious,

As we already know, the process of the optimization of control of the method of dynamic programming begins from the last (m-th) step/pitch. Let afterward (m-1)-th step/pitch the system be in state  $S_{m-1}$ . Since latter/last (m-th) step/pitch must translate system into state  $S_m = S_{\text{kon}} \in \widetilde{S}_{\text{kon}}$ , ther as  $S_{m-1}$  is possible to take not all in the principle possible states of system, but only those from which for one step/pitch it is possible to pass into region  $\widetilde{S}_{\text{kon}}$ .

Let us assume that state  $S_{m-1}$  to us is known, and let us find under this condition conditional optimum control on the m step/pitch; let us designate it  $U_m^*(S_{m-1})$ . This is - the control which, being used at the m step/pitch, translates system into final state  $S_m \in \widetilde{S}_{\text{kon}}$ , the prize at this latter/last step/pitch  $W_m$  reaching its maximum value:

$$W_m^*(S_{m-1}) = \max_{U_m} \{W_m(S_{m-1}, U_m)\}. \tag{7.7}$$

Let us recall the sense of  $S_1$ mbolic formula (7.7).  $W_m(S_{m-1}, U_m)$  indicates prize generally (not optimum) at the latter/last step/pitch; it depends both on the result of previous step/pitch  $S_{m-1}$  and on used at this step/pitch control  $U_m$ . Of all gains

 $W_m(S_{m-1},U_m)$  during different controls  $U_m$  is chosen that prize  $\hat{W}^*(S_{m-1})$ . which has maximum value; this it indicates recording  $\max_{U_m}$ .

Page 49.

Let us note that as controls  $U_m$  we must take only those which translate system of the preset state  $S_{m-1}$  into state  $S_m$  belonging to region  $\tilde{S}_{\text{non}}$ .

Finding the conditional maximum value of prize  $W_m^*(S_{m-1})$ , we thereby find conditional optimum continual maximum prize  $W_m^*(S_{m-1})$  is achieved by conditional optimum control  $U_m^*(S_{m-1})$ , we will regulated by approximately in the form

 $W_m^*(S_{m-1}) \sim U_m^*(S_{m-1})$ 

and subsequently we will use this recording for the indication of conformity between the conditional maximum prize and the conditional optimum control at each ster/pica.

Thus, the optimization of latter/last step/pitch with any result of next-to-last is produced, and is found the corresponding conditional optimum control. Fine obtained result can be formulated thus: in whatever state proved to be the system after (m-1) step/pitch, we already know that to us to make further.

Let us switch over to the optimization of next-to-last (m-1) step/pitch. Let us do again the assumption that as a result (m-2) step/pitch the system arrived into scate  $S_{m-2}$ . Let at (m-1) step/pitch we use control  $U_{m-1}$ . As a result of this control we at (m-1) step/pitch will obtain the prize, which depends both on the state of system and on the used control:

$$\mathbf{w}_{m-1} = \mathbf{w}_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}),$$
 (7.8)

and system becomes new state  $S_{m-1}$ , also depending on the previous state and on the control:

$$S_{m-1} = S_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}). \tag{7.9}$$

But for any result of (m-1) scappitch the following, m stepppitch is already optimized, and maximum prize on it is equal to

$$W_{m}^{*}(S_{m-1}) = W_{m}^{*}(S_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}))!). \quad (7.10)$$

FOOTNOTE 1. The sense of recording (7.10) following: prize  $W_m^*$  there is a function of state  $S_{m-1}$ , which in turn, depends on previous state  $S_{m-2}$  and used control  $U_{m-1}$ . Since for the designation of functional dependence it is accepted to use the parenthesis, then in the formulas of type (7.10) we place the parenthesis of inside circular ones. ENDFCCTNOTE.

Page 50.

Let us introduce into the examination full/total/complete prize

at two latter/last steps/pitches during any control at (n-1) step/pitch optimum control at the mistap/pitch. Let us designate its  $W_{m-1,m}^+$ , sign "+" it will us remind that this is prize during the incompletely optimized control, in contrast to the sign "\*", by which we designated prize with that completely optimized control. Frize  $W_{m-1,m}^+$  it is obvious, it depends on the previous state of system  $S_{m-2}$  and used at (m-1) step/pitch control  $U_{m-1}$ . Taking into account for mulas (7.8) and (7.16), we will obtain the following expression for  $W_{m-1,m}^+$ :

$$W_{m-1, m}^+(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}) = \\ = w_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}) + W_m^*(S_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1})).$$
 (7.11)

we should select this optimum conditional control at (m-1) step/pitch  $U_{m-1}^*(S_{m-2})$ , with walch value (7.11) would achieve the maximum:

$$W_{m-1, m}^{*}(S_{m-2}) = \max_{U_{m-1}} \{W_{m-1, m}^{+}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1})\}. \quad (7.12)$$

Just as in the previous stays of optimization, as states  $S_{m-2}$  afterward (m-2) steps/pitches at as necessary to take not all possible states of system, but only those from which it is possible to pass in  $\tilde{S}_{mm}$  for two steps/pitches.

Thus, is found maximum conditional prize on two latter/last steps/pitches and corresponding to it optimum conditional control at (m-1) step/pitch:

$$W_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(S_{m-2}) \sim U_{m-1}^{\bullet}(S_{m-2}).$$

By continuing by accurately such form, it is possible to find conditional maximum prizes on several natter/last steps/pitches of process and corresponding to them optimum conditional controls:

$$W_{m-2, m-1, m}^{*}(S_{m-3}) \sim U_{m-2}^{*}(S_{m-3}),$$
  
 $W_{m-3, m-2, m-1, m}^{*}(S_{m-4}) \sim U_{m-3}^{*}(S_{m-4})$ 

and so forth.

Page 51.

If we already optimized (1+1) step/pitch for any issue of the i-th, i.e., they found

$$W_{i+1,...,m}^*(S_i) \sim U_{i+1}^*(S_i).$$

that the conditional optimization of the 1 step/pitch it is produced according to the general formula

$$W_{i,\ i+1,\ ...,\ m}^{\bullet}(S_{i-1}) = \max_{U_i} \{W_{i,\ i+1,\ ...,\ m}^{+}(S_{i-1},\ U_i)\}. \quad (7.13)$$

where

$$W_{l,t+1,\ldots,m}^{+}(S_{l-1},U_{l}) = \\ = w_{l}(S_{l-1},U_{l}) + W_{l+1,\ldots,m}^{*}(S_{l}(S_{l-1},U_{l})) \quad (7.14)$$

- prize, reached at the large-flast staps/pitches, beginning from the i-th, during any control at the stap/pitch and optimum control on all those following:  $S_i(S_{i-1}, U_i)$  - the state into which passes the system from  $S_{i-1}$  under the effect of control  $U_i$ .

Thus, is determined committeenal maximum prize at the last

steps/pitches, beginning from the 1-th, and the corresponding optimum conditional centrel at the 1 step/pitch:

$$W_{i, i+1, ..., m}^{\bullet}(S_{i-1}) \sim U_{i}^{\bullet}(S_{i-1}).$$
 (7.15)

Applying consecutively/serially, step by step, the described procedure, we will reach finally the first step/pitch:

$$W_1, \ldots, m(S_0) \sim U_1^*(S_0),$$
 (7.16)

where  $S_0$  - some initial state of system, which belongs to region  $\widetilde{S}_0$  of the possible initial states:  $S_0 \in \widetilde{S}_0$ .

Remains to select oftimally the initial state of system  $S*_0$  if the initial state  $S_0$  in the accuracy preset (i.e. entire/all region  $\widetilde{S}_0$  is reduced to one point  $S_0$ ), can there is no selection, and  $S*_0=S_0$ . But if point  $S_0$  can are early be chosen in the limits of region  $\widetilde{S}_0$ , then it is necessary to optimize the selection of initial state, i.e., to find absolute (no longer conditional) maximum prize in all steps/pitches:

$$W_{1, ..., m}^{\bullet} = \max_{S_{0} \in \widetilde{S}_{0}} \{ W_{1, ..., m}^{\bullet} (S_{0}) \},$$
 (7.17)

where the recording max laurgates: maximum is taken due to all sets  $S_0$ , entering region  $\widetilde{S}_0$ . Folkt  $S_0$ , at which it is reached this maximum, and should be taken as the initial state of system.

Page 52.

Thus, as a result of the consecutive passage of all stages from

the end/lead at the beginning are round: the maximum value of prize for all m steps/pitches and corresponding to it optimum initial state of the process

$$W^* = W_{1, 2, \dots, m}^* \sim S_0^* \tag{7.18}$$

But is constructed alread, optimus control? No yet: indeed we found on each step/pitch cal, in conficional optimus control.

In order to find crtimum control in the final instance, we must again pass entire sequence or sters/pitches - this time from the beginning toward the end. This second "passage on the steps/pitches" will be much simpler than the first, because to vary conditions no longer it is necessary.

As the initial state or system is selected  $S*_0$  (or simply  $S_0$ , if initial state is rigidly fixed/lecorded). At the first step/pitch is applied the optimum control  $u*_1 (see (7.16))$ 

$$U_1^{\bullet} = U_1^{\bullet}(S_0^{\bullet}), \tag{7.19}$$

after which system it passes into newly the state

$$S_1^* = S_1(S_0^*, U_1^*). \tag{7.20}$$

It is now necessary to select of the uncontrol at the second step/pitch. We already of the first step/pitch, i.e. we know  $U*_2\{S_1\}$  (were (7.15)); substituting in it  $S*_1$ , we will obtain

$$U_2^{\bullet} = U_2^{\bullet}(S_i^{\bullet}), \tag{7.21}$$

and so on, until we reach the Jetamum control at the latter/last step/pitch

$$U_m^* = U_m^* (S_{m-1}^*) (7.22)$$

and the final states of the system

$$S_m^* = S_{kon}^* = S_m^* (S_{m-1}^*, U_m^*).$$
 (7.23)

As a result of this entire procedure is found finally the solution of the problem: maximally possible prize W\* and the optimum control U\* which consists or the optimum controls on the single steps/pitches (vector of optimum control)

$$U^* = (U_1^*, \ U_2^*, \ \dots, \ U_m^*). \tag{7.24}$$

Page 53.

Thus, in the process of dynamic programming the sequence of stages passes twice: for the first time - from the end/lead at the beginning, as a result of walca is found the maximum value of prize #\*, the optimum initial state of process  $S*_0$  and conditional optimum control at each step/pitch; for the second time - from the beginning toward the end, as a result of walch is found optimum control  $U_i^*$  on each step/pitch and final state of system with the optimum control  $S^*_{\text{Non}}$ .

Thus, we succeeded in presenting in general form and registering with the help of the general formulas the process of dynamic programming. In view of the symbolic recording of formulas the

structure of process is very sample, but this - false impression.

Upon the setting of the specific problems of dynamic programming frequently appear the difficulties.

These difficulties are connected, in the first place, with the selection of the group of parameters  $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$  characterizing the state of the physical system s. As it was already said, these parameters must be chosen so that in the preset state  $S(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$  of system s at any moment/torque its rollowing state  $S'(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ , into which it passes under the effect of control u, it depended only on the previous state s and charpe u and did not depend on "past history" of process, i.e., from that, when, as as a result of what controls system arrived into state s. If this proves to be not then it comes those elements/cells of the past on which depends the future, to include in the set of parameters  $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ , those characterizing the state of system at the given moment/torque. But this leads to an increase in the number of measurements of phase space and, which means, to the complication of task.

The second difficulty consists of reasonable "staging" of process. It is necessary so to disenjage the process of transition from  $\tilde{S}_0$  to  $\tilde{S}_{\text{non}}$  to the steps/pluches so that they would allow/assume the convenient numbering and the precise sequence of operations. This task is frequently far not sample.

Page 54.

As has been mentioned above, the distribution of process into the discrete/digital "steps/rluches" is not the nacessary sign/criterion of the method or upuamic programming. In principle always it is possible to direct the length of step/pitch toward zero and to consider limiting case - "conclusious" dynamic programming. It is possible to obtain in the final form the solution of such continuous problems only in the rare cases, but they have the high theoretical value in the proof of the existence theorems, and also different qualitative properties of the optimum solutions (see [1]). In our elementary presentation of the setnod of dynamic programming we will in no way concern these limiting cases.

In further paragraphs we will consider a whole series of the practical tasks, which are anequate/approach under the overall diagram of dynamic programming. Some of these tasks we will only supply, for the majority let us sketch the diagram of the solution, while some solution to the end/medu. Some tasks comparatively easily are carried out under the overall diagram, presented in this paragraph; above the setting or others it is necessary to still take some pains itself. Keeping in minutual unwieldiness of calculations "by

hand", it is easy to comprehend that to the concrete/specific/actual numerical result will be led cally the simplest tasks with a small number of parameters x<sub>1</sub>, x<sub>2</sub>, ..., that are determining the state of system. However, it is necessary to have in mind that by completely the same methods with the neary of the contemporary high speed computers it is possible to solve and much more complex problems with a considerable number of parameters. However, as far as number is concerned of steps/pitches m, then for the machine calculation its increase difficulties does not generally obtain: simply increases the time of calculation projections.

Page 55.

§3. Task of distributing the resources/lifetimes.

Among the practical tasas, solved by the method of dynamic programming, many they have as a year to find the rational distribution of resources/liletimes according to different categories of actions. To this type belongs, for example, the task about the distribution of means to the equipment, the purchase of raw material and the hire of work force quiling the organization for work of industrial enterprise; the task about the distribution of goods according to the commercial and source the distribution of means between different categories.

DOC = 80151503 FAGE /23

task about the weight distribution batteen different aggregates/units of technical device/equipment, etc.

dere we will consider case or the simplest tasks of distributing the rasources/lifetimes, on walla it is easy to damonstrate the special feature/peculiarity of many similar tasks.

There is preset initial quantity of means Zo (it is not compulsory in the money form, , waich we must distribute between two branches of the production: I amm II. These means, being they are imbedied in branch I and Ii, yield the specific income. A quantity of means x, included into tranch I, in one year arrives income f(x); in this case it is reduced (paralally it is expended), so that toward the and of the year from it .amains the remainder/residue, equal to **≠**(x):  $\varphi(x) \leqslant x$ .

Is analogous a quantity of means y, impedded in branch II, yields in the year income g(y) and is reduced to  $\psi(y)$ :

 $\Psi(y) \leqslant y$ .

After each year the remaining means again are distributed between the branches. New means it does not act, and into the production are packed all remaining in the presence means.

It is necessary to find such method of control of service lives

DOC = 80151503 FAGE /24

- what means, in what years and into what branches to pack, with which total income during the pulsed into m of years is converted into the maximum.

de will solve problem o, the method of dynamic programming. The physical system S, which we will manage, is the group of enterprises with the imbedded in them weens. Frize W - income from both branches I and II during entire person. Abough ment - to plan/glide on m of years - gives the natural arraculation of process on m cf steps/pitches (stages). However, for the purpose of presentation we will at each step/pitch distangulan two halfsters or "component/link". On the first or than occurs the redistribution of means; on the second - the means only are expended and occurs formation of income.

Page 56.

Let us select the now numerical parameters with the help of which we will characterize satuation (state of system).

The situation before beginning that I stage (before the redistribution of means) let us agree to characterize by quantities of the means

 $x'_{i-1}, y'_{i-1}$ 

DOC = 80151503 FAGE /25

those remaining in branches a and AI after previous (i-1) step/pitch:

FOOTNOTE 1. This does not relace to the rirst step/pitch in the beginning of which to us is  $sim_{pl}$  given certain quantity of means  $Z_0$ . ENDFOCTNOTE.

Situation after the distribution of means (i.e. after the first component/link of the i step/pizcu, we will characterize by quantities of the means

 $x_i, y_i$ 

those packed in branch I and II as this step/pitch.

As a result of the second component/link of the i stap/pitch (consumption of resources) thas values it is reduced and will become equal to

 $x_i'$ ,  $y_i'$ ,

after which we let us pass to tae collowing step/pitch.

Let us depict the state or system as point S in the phase space. This space can be constructed in different ways; for the purpose of clarity we will select its two-dimensional (Fig. 8.1).

Along the axis of abschises or we will plot/deposit the quantity

of resources, packed into branch 1: in axis of ordinates Oy quantity of resources, packed into branch II. Then phase space will
be the part of plane xCy, which ites within and on the borders of
triangle AOB. Actually/reall, row any stage of production the sum of
the resources, imbedded in pranch i and II, cannot exceed the initial
supply of the resources:

$$x + y > Z_0;$$
 (8.1)

furthermore, these enclosures are non-negative:

$$x \geqslant 0; \quad y \geqslant 0. \tag{8.2}$$

DOC = 80151503 PAGE / 67

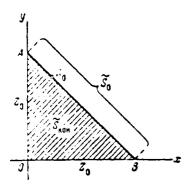


Fig. 3.1.

Page 57.

By the region of plane xOy, which sacisties conditions (8.1) and (8.2), is triangle ACE; this and there is the phase space, in which it can change its position point a, which represents the state of systea.

Let us determine regular  $\tilde{S}_{0}$  and  $\tilde{S}_{kon}$  of the initial and final conditions of system.

At the initial schent sage, that we know about the state of system, this that the fact that the sum of enclosures into both branches is equal to the initial supply of the resources:

$$x+y=Z_0$$
.

FAGE /08

DOC = 80151503

This condition satisfies any polar cutting off AB, which and is region  $\widetilde{S}_0$  of the initial states of system. As far as position is concerned of end point  $\widetilde{S}_{nm}$ , then we know only that for it

 $x \geqslant 0$ ,  $y \geqslant 0$ ,  $x + y < Z_0$ 

i.e. region  $\tilde{S}_{\text{con}}$  is entire transposed, besides hypotenuse AB.

Let us look, what form can take the trajectory of point S in the phase space. Since we examine discretized problem, this trajectory we will represent in the form of flower line (Fig. 8.2). At the first step/pitch, in contrast to others, occurs only the expenditure of the resources (there is no redistribution). In this case of the point  $s_0$ with the coordinates (x1, 11) de rass into point M with the coordinates (x'1, y'1). Since A'16x1, y'16y1, the this component/link of trajectory is the sequent, unrected from point So downward and to the laft. The following (secund) step/pitch is divided into two components/links:  $2_1$  and  $2_2$ . On the first component/link  $2_1$  occurs the radistribution of resources; in this case x+y remains constant and, which means, point Sis moved on the straight line, parallel AB, into point N with the coordinates  $(x_2, y_2)$ , on the second component/link of second star/pitch (2z) again occurs the expenditure of resources, and point 5 moves wownward and to the left, and so on, until through a cf sters/pic.nes is icnieved/reached final state  $S_{x_{min}}$  - point with coordinates  $(x_m^2, y_m')$ .

DOG = 80151503 FAGE /49

Fage 58.

Let us note that the components/links of staps/pitches are nonequivalent: control is realized only on the first component/link of each step/pitch, and on the second se obtain income. Control  $U_i$  on the i step/pitch (realized on one rims: component/link  $i_1$ ) consists of the selection of non-negative values  $x_i$ ,  $y_i$  of such, that

$$x_i + y_i = x'_{i-1} + y'_{i-1}$$

After this we obtain or the second component/link of the i step/pitch  $(I_2)$  the income

$$\mathbf{w}_i = f(x_i) + g(y_i), \tag{8.3}$$

but point S, which represents the state of system, passes to the new position with the coordinates

$$x'_i = \varphi(x_i); \quad y'_i = \psi(y_i). \tag{8.4}$$

It is necessary to find this position  $S*_0$  of point  $S_0$  on the straight line AB and this trajectory of point S in the phase space so that the total income for all a or the staps/pitches

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{m} w_i \tag{8.5}$$

would be converted into the maximum.

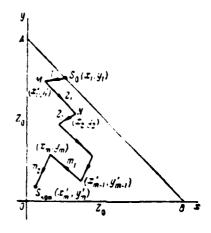


Fig. 3.2.

Page 59.

Jefore us - the typical task of dynamic programming. let us use to its solution the general/communitatal methods, presented in the previous paragraph. In order to make a concrete/specific/actual application/appendix of general method as clear as possible, we will permit ourselves perhaps a letter to be repeated.

As always, we will optimize the process of distributing the resources, beginning from the end/lead, moreover immediately on both components/links of each ster/pitch (taking into account that the second of them it is unguided).

Let before the m-th (LacteL/LaSt) step/pitch we be found at point  $(x'_{m-1}, y'_{m-1})$ , and we must reduscribute resources, i.e., select point  $(x_m, y_m)$  such, that

$$x_m + y_m = x'_{m-1} + y'_{m-1}$$

Let us note that for solving this for us is not required knowledge of both numbers  $x'_{m-1}, y'_{m-1}$ , and it is essential to know only their sum, which is subject to the redistribution:

$$Z_{m-1} = x'_{m-1} + y'_{m-1}$$
 1).

FOOTNOTE: Since the state of system after each stage is characterized only by one number, we could select our phase space one-dimensional, but then trajectory would appear so not clearly. ENDFOOTNOTE.

Redistribution will consist in the fact that we will isolate some part  $x_m$  of resources  $Z_{m-1}$  and put it into branch I; a quantity of resources  $y_m$ , which is packed into branch II, automatically it will be determined from the relationship/ratio

$$y_m = Z_{m-1} - x_m.$$

Thus, at m step/pitch "control" is  $x_m$ . We must find on this step/pitch conditional optimum countrol, i.e., for any value  $Z_{m-1}$  find such quantity of rescurces  $x_m^*(Z_{m-1})$ , of caose packed in branch I, with which the income at the m step/patch, equal to

$$W_m(Z_{m-1}, x_m) = w_m(Z_{m-1}, x_m).$$
 (8.6)

PAGE # 1/2

is converted into the sammus:

$$W_m^*(Z_{m-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_m \le Z_{m-1}} [W_m(Z_{m-1}, x_m)].$$
 (8.7)

DOC = 80151504 PAGE // 3

Page 60.

Recording max. Beans that is taken the maximum  $0 < x_m < Z_{m-1}$ 

in terms of all possible at this step values of control  $x_m$ ; they are non-negative and do not exceed the general/common/total supply of means  $Z_{m-1}$ , by which we arrive a at this step.

Expressing maximum income (6.7) at the last step/pitch through the imbedded means according to roundle (3.3), we will obtain

$$W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_{m-1} \le Z_{m-1}} \{ f(x_{m}) + g(Z_{m-1} - x_{m}) \}. (8.8)$$

To this maximum value corresponds the specific conditional optimum control at the s step/pitch

$$W_m^*(Z_{m-1}) \sim U_m^*(Z_{m-1}).$$

and the problem of the conditional optimization of the m step/pitch is solved.

Let us switch over to the conditional optimization of next-to-last ((m-1)-th step/ $_{c}$  ltcu. Let after (m-2)-th step/pitch be preserved the supply of the means

$$Z_{m-2} = x'_{m-2} + y'_{m-2}. (8.9)$$

DOC = 80151504 PAGE // 4

Let us find  $W_{m-1,m}(Z_{m-2})$  - conditional maximum income in two latter/last steps/pitches. Let countril  $U_{m-1}$  used at (m-1)-th step/pitch, consist of the fact that we pack into branch I provisions  $x_{m-1}$  (and that means, ifto chauch AI - provisions  $y_{m-1}=Z_{m-2}-x_{m-1}$ ). With respect to these enclosures at (m-1)-th step/pitch we will obtain the income

$$\mathcal{L}_{m-1}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1}) = f(x_{m-1}) + g(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}). \quad (8.10)$$

and system changes into the round of phase space with the coordinates

$$x'_{m-1} = z(x_{m-1}), \ y'_{m-1} = z(y_{m-1}) = z(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}).$$
 (8.11)

According to the general/common/total principle (see §7) in order to optimize conditional control at (m-1)-th step/pitch, it is necessary to sum income at (m-1)-th stap/pitch (8.10) during any control  $x_{m-1}$  with the alread, optimized income at m step/pitch (8.8); we will obtain total income at two latter/last steps/pitches

$$W_{m-1, m}^{+}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1}) = = w_{m-1}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1}) + W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}). \quad (8.12)$$

Page o1.

After this let us find the control  $x_{m-1}$  on (m-1) -th step/pitch with which income (8.12) is converted into the maximum:

$$W_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{0 \le x_{m-1} \le Z_{m-2}} \{W_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1})\}. \quad (8.13)$$

Let us write evident express\_cu  $W_{m-1,m}^+(Z_{m-2},x_{m-1})$  as to function from both arguments. For this let us substitute into formula (8.12) expression (8.10):

$$W_{m-1, m}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1}) = f(x_{m-1}) + g(Z_{m-2}, -x_{m-1}) + W_{m}(Z_{m-1}).$$
(8.14)

But on right side of (8.14) is included, besides  $Z_{m-2}$  and  $x_{m-1}$ , still  $Z_{m-1}$ . In order to get rid or call wexcess argument, let us recall that the supply of means  $Z_{m-1}$  area. (m-1)—th step/pitch depends on the supply of means  $Z_{m-2}$  or available at the beginning of this step/pitch, and used at (m-1,-rm step/pitch control  $x_{m-1}$ ; according to formula (8.4)  $Z_{m-1} = \varphi(x_{m-1}) + \psi(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}), \qquad (8.15)$ 

Substituting this expression into rormula (8.14) and then (8.14) in (8.13), we will obtain finding the expression of conditional maximum income at two latter/last steps/pitches:

$$W_{m-1, m}^{*}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{\substack{0 \le x_{m-1} \le Z_{m-2} \\ + W_{m}^{*}(\varphi(x_{m-1}) + \varphi(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}))}} \{f(x_{m-1}) + \varphi(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1})\}, (8.16)$$

where f, g,  $\phi$   $\psi$  - specific, preser functions of their arguments, and  $W_m^*(Z_{m-1})$  - function, obtained as a result of the conditional

PAGE 116

DOC = 80151504

optimization of latter/last ster/r = ton; into this function (given one by formula, graph or table) instead of argument  $Z_{m-1}$  it is necessary to substitute value (8.15).

Page 62.

The value  $x_{m-1}$  with walls accains maximum (8.16), and there is conditional optimum central at (m-1)-ta step/pitch

$$x_{m-1}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2}).$$

Thus, the problem of the conditional optimization of control at (m-1)-th step/pitch is solven: Is sound conditional maximum income in two latter/last steps/pitches and corresponding to it conditional optimization controls - quantity of means, packed on (m-1)-th step/pitch into branch I:  $W^*_{m-1} = (Z_{m-2}) \sim x^*_{m-1}(Z_{m-2}).$ 

By continuing the process or conditional optimization in exactly the same manner, we will obtain for any (the i-th) step/pitch conditional maximum income for all staps/pitches, by beginning from the data:

$$W_{i, i+1, ..., m}^{*}(Z_{i-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_{i} \le Z_{i-1}} \{W_{i, i+1, ..., m}^{*}(Z_{i-1}, x_{i})\}, \quad (8.17)$$

whera

$$W_{i,i+1,\ldots,m}^{+}(Z_{i-1},x_{i}) = f(x_{i}) + g(Z_{i-1} - x_{i}) + W_{i+1,\ldots,m}^{+}(\varphi(x_{i}) + \psi(Z_{i-1} - x_{i})).$$
(8.18)

and  $W_{i-1,...,m}^{*}(Z_{i})$  - function, alleady conscructed during the optimization of the istep/pitch: into this function instead of argument  $Z_{i}$  it is necessary to substitute the expression

$$\varphi(x_i) + \varphi(Z_{i-1} - x_i). \tag{8.19}$$

Substituting (8.18) in (8.17), we will obtain evident expression  $W^*_{(n), \dots, m}(Z_{(n)})$  through known functions  $f \in \mathcal{G} \cap \mathcal{P} \cap W^*_{(n), \dots, m}$ 

$$W_{i,i+1,...,m}^{*}(Z_{i-1}) = \max_{0 < x_{i} < Z_{i-1}} \left\{ f(x_{i}) + g(Z_{i-1} - x_{i}) + W_{i+1,...,m}^{*}(\varphi(x_{i}) + \psi(Z_{i-1} - x_{i})) \right\}. \quad (8.20)$$

To this conditional maximum income corresponds conditional optimum control at the i step/gitch:

$$W_{i,l+1,\ldots,m}^{\bullet}(Z_{i-1}) \sim x_i^{\bullet}(Z_{i-1}).$$
 (8.21)

when thus we produce the conditional optimization of all steps/pitches, except the rist first us recall that it is qualitatively different from the others, since it consists only of one component/link), to us it remains to optimize control on this first step/pitch and to find the maximum full/total/complete prize at all steps/pitches, which depends it joes without saying on the initial supply of means Zo:

$$W^*(Z_0) = W_{1, 2, \dots, m}^*(Z_0).$$
 (8.22)

Page 63.

DOC = 80 15 1504 FAGE //8

Value  $W_{1,2,...,m}^{\bullet}(Z_0)$  will be located from the same formula (8.20) as at the remaining steps/fitches:

$$W_{1,2,...,m}^{*}(Z_{0}) = \max_{0 \le x_{1} \le Z_{1}} \{ f(x_{1}) + g(Z_{0} - x_{1}) + W_{2,...,m}^{*}(\varphi(x_{1}) + \psi(Z_{0} - x_{1})) \}. \quad (8.23)$$

Entire/all special feature/pecumarity of the first step/pitch lies in the fact that the initial supply of means 20 is not varied, but it is assumed to be known. The value of control x\*1, at which reaches maximum (8.23), is no longer conditionally optimum, but simply optimum control at the first step/pitch which it is necessary to use.

This value  $x*_1$  determines the abscissa of point  $S*_0$  on cutting off A3, with which begins because trajectory in the phase space.

knowing the position or this point and again passing all steps/pitches, but already in the opposite direction - from the beginning toward the end, it is possible to construct entire optimum trajectory of point S. Let us trace now will pass this trajectory, on the steps/pitches and their components/links.

In the beginning of the first step/pitch point S is found on cutting off AB and has coordinates

$$x_1^*, y_1^* = Z_0 - x_1^*.$$

After the first step/pitch point is moved into the point with the coordinates  $(x_i')^* = \varphi(x_i'); \quad (y_i')^* = \psi(y_i').$ 

300 = 80151504

sum of which is equal to the supply of means after the first step/pitch

$$Z_i^{\bullet} = (x_i')^{\bullet} + (y_i')^{\bullet}.$$

On the first component/link of the second step/pitch occurs the redistribution of means; point a passes into the point with the coordinates

$$x_2^* = x_2^*(Z_1^*), \quad y_2^* = Z_1^* - x_2^*.$$

where  $x*_2(Z*_1)$  - the conditional optimum control at the second step/pitch, in which instead on  $a_1$  is set  $Z*_1$ .

Fage 54.

On the second component/link or the second step/pitch occurs the expenditure of the means, and point is as moved into the point with the coordinates

$$(x_2')^{\bullet} = \gamma(x_2^{\bullet}); \quad (y_2')^{\bullet} = \psi(y_2^{\bullet}).$$

sum of which is equal to the remaining toward the end of the second step/pitch supply of the means

$$Z_2^* = (x_2^{\prime})^* + (y_2^{\prime})^*$$

and so forth up to the latter/last scap/pitch.

Thus find the final solution of the problem: maximum income for

all m of steps/pitches W\* and corresponding to it optimum control  $X*=X*(x*_1, x*_2, ..., x*_m)$  indicating, anat quantity of means in what stage it is necessary to select into means I (remainder/residue automatically is abstracted/lemoved to branch II).

After is examined the specific problem of dynamic programming, it is useful again to return to the general/common/total presentation of a question into §7 and to look, what concrete/specific/actual embodiment obtained in this problem the introduced there general/common/total corcepts.

The system of these conformat; we will register in the form of the table, divided into two parts by vartical feature; to the left of the facture we will write that value, concept or symbol which was applied in general; to the ragar - corresponding to it analog in our special case.

PAGE 4

()) В общем случае	( 2) В нашем частном глучае
физическая системы \$	Группа предприятии с вло- женными в них срезствами (У)
т этапон (шагов)	(6) m set
(7) Аллитивный критерий	Общий доход за <i>т</i> лет
$W = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \boldsymbol{w}_{i},$	$W = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i$
іле w, — выперыці на і-м інаге	гле $w_i = \text{доход от отраслей !}$ и II на $i$ -м шаге
$(\mathbf{q})$ Управисине $U_I$ на $i$ -м шаге	(в) Количество средсти х, вкладываемое в отрасав
(п) Состоянне системы после i-го шага S <sub>i</sub>	((2) Количество средств $x'_1$ , $y'_2$ , оставлинася в отраслях і и ІІ соответственню, существенню для планирования длависиния шагов является их сумма $Z_1 = x'_1 + y'_2$
	$\mathcal{L}_{I} = \mathcal{L}_{I} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{I}$
(13) Состояние системы после $i$ -го инага в зависимости от ее состояния после $(i-1)$ -го шага и управления на $i$ -м имаге $S_i = S_l(S_{l-1}, U_l)$	$Z_i = \overline{\gamma}(x_i) + \overline{\varphi}(Z_{i-1} - x_i)$
$(IY)$ Вынгрыш на $i$ -м шаго в зависимости от исхода $(i-1)$ -го шага $S_{i-1}$ и примененного на $i$ -м шаге управления: $w_i (S_{i-1}, U_i)$	$w_i(Z_{i-1}, x_i) = f(x_i) + g(Z_{i-1} - x_i)$
1 (5/2). 5/	
(/5) Фазовое пространство	(16) Треугольник АОВ (см. рис. 8.1)
(17) Область начальных состояний системы $\tilde{S}_{\bf 0}$	((8) Отрезок АВ (см. рнс Ч.)
(15) Область консчиых состоя- ший системы З <sub>ком</sub>	(26) Треугольник АОВ (за исключением гипотенузы) (см. рис. 8.1)
Онтимальное начальное состояние системы $S_0$	Оптимальное количество средств $x_1^{i}$ выделенное в первую отрасль, и определяемое им количество средств $y_1^{i} = Z_0 - x_1^{i}$ , пыделенное во вторую отрасль

FAGE 🗪

Оптимальное управление  $U^* = (U_1^*, U_2^*, \dots, U_m^*)$  Оптимальное количес средств по годам, выделяе в отрасль  $\mathbb{I}$ :  $X^* = (x_1^*, x_2^*, \dots, x_m^*)$ 

Key: (1). In general. (2). In our spaceal case. (3). Physical system S. (4). Group of entergrises with impedded in them means. (5). m of ethanes (steps/pitches). (o). reals. (1). Additive criterion where w; - prize at i step/patch. (d). Aggregate profit after m of vears where 🛫 - income from transmes a and II at i step/pitch. (9). at i step/pitch. (10) A quantity of reans x; packed into branca I. (11). State of system arrenward i-th step/pitch Si.(12). Quantity of means kiny: remaining in pranches I and II respectively, essential for planning further steps/pitches is their sum. (13). State of system after i step/pitch depending on its state after (i-1) -th step/pitch and contact at i step/pitch. (14). Frize at i step/pitch depending on issue or (1-1)-to step/pitch S;-, and used at i stap/pitch control. (15). rname space. (16). Triangle AOB (see Fig. 8.1) (17). Region of the initial states of system  $\widetilde{S}_0$ . (18). Segment AB (see Fig. 8.1). (19). Region of final states of system. (20). Triangle AOB (except for hypoteduse) (see Fig. 8.1). (21). Optimum initial state of system. (24). Optimum quantity of means x\*1, isolated in first branch, and determined by it quantity of means  $y*_1=Z_0-x*_1$ , isolated in second clauch. (23). Optimus control. (24). Optimum quantity of means over jears, separating into branch I.

In the following presentation do dell averywhere follow overall diagram §7, no longer accompanying it by so/such comprehensive by explanations.

§9. Examples of the tasks about the listribution of resources/lifetimes.

For mastering the general solution of the task about the distribution of resources/limitations, given in the previous paragraph, it is useful to use it or the conclute/specific/actual material. Here we will consider two specific axamples or general problem about the distribution of the resources/limitations, in each of which let us assign the completely specific form of the function f(x), g(y),  $\phi(x)$ ,  $\phi(y)$ , and let us bring each or the examples to the numerical result.

Example 1. Is planned/yelled the fork of two branches of production I and II for period m or years.

A quantity of means x, is succeed in oranch I, gives in one year the income  $f(x) = x^2 \tag{9.1}$ 

and lue to this it is reduced to

$$\varphi(x) = 0.75x. \tag{9.2}$$

A quantity of means y, \_mpeaced in oranch II, gives in one year the income  $g(y)=2y^2 \tag{9.3}$ 

PAGE 124

and it is reduced to

$$\psi(y) = 0.3y^{-1}$$
. (9.4)

FOOTNOTE 1. Unity the measurement of income and imbedded means must not be the same. The use/apprication of formulas of type (9.1) and (9.3) does not contradict the principles of dimensions, if means and income are expressed in completely specific units of measurement. ENDFOOTNOTE.

Page 57.

It is necessary to produce the distribution of service lives  $Z_0$  between branches of the I and II to sain year period being planned.

Solution. Conditional of timum control  $x_m^*$  on the latter/last step/pitch (quantity of means, isolated in tranch I) is located as value  $x_m$  with which it reaches maximum income at the latter/last step/pitch:

$$W_{m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-1}) = \max_{0 < x_{m} < Z_{m-1}} \{w_{m}(Z_{m-1}, x_{m})\}.$$

$$w_{m}(Z_{m-1}, x_{m}) = x_{m}^{2} + 2(Z_{m-1} - x_{m})^{2}. \tag{9.5}$$

where

The graph of function

$$w_m = w_m(Z_{m-1}, x_m)$$

depending on argument  $x_m$  is regresented with the given one  $Z_{m-1}$  by

FAGE 125

DOC = 80151504

certain parabola (Fig. 5.1). The second derivative of function  $w_m$  of  $x_m$  is positive, and therefore parabola is converted concave-up. Maximum value can be reached only on the borders of gap/interval  $(0, Z_{m-1})^2$ ).

FOOTNOTE 2. Therefore has no sense to attempt to seek the maximum of function  $w_m$  equating the derivative to zero. ENDFCOINCTE.

In order to determine, on what precisely border, let us substitute into formula (9.5)  $x_m=0$  and  $x_m=Z_{m-1}$  do will obtain in the first case (when  $x_m=0$ )

$$w_m = 2Z_{m-1}^2.$$

in the second case (when  $x_m = Z_{m-1}$ )  $w_m = Z_{m-1}^2$ 

The first value more than the second: consequently, independent of value  $Z_{m-1}$ , the maximum of income at the latter/last step/pitch reaches when  $x_m=0$ , i.e., conditional optimum control  $x_m^*(Z_{m-1})$  does not depend on  $Z_{m-1}$  and it is always equal to zero, but this means that in the baginning of last year all available means it is necessary to pack into branch II.

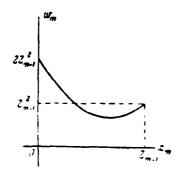


Fig. 3.1.

Page 68.

This is only logical, since income from this tranch is more, but the expenditure of resources us no lowyer interests (following step/pitch it will not be).

Juring this optimum control tast /ear will bring to us the income  $W_m^*(Z_{m-1})=2Z_{m-1}^2.$ 

Let us switch over to the distribition of resources to (n-1)-th year. Let we approach it with the supply of resources  $Z_{n-2}$ . Let us find the conditional maximum income in two last year:

$$W_{m-1,m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{\substack{\alpha_{m-1} \leq Z_{m-1} \\ \alpha_{m-1} \leq Z_{m-2}}} \{x_{m-1}^{2} + 2(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1})^{2} + W_{m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-1})\}.$$

DOC = 80151504 FAGE 127

But

$$Z_{m-1} = 0.75x_{m-1} + 0.3(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}).$$

and consequently,

$$W_m^*(Z_{m-1}) = 2[0.75x_{m-1} + 0.3(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1})]^2$$

Hanca we will obtain

$$A_{m-1, m}^{2}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{0 \le x_{m-1} \le Z_{m-2}} \left\{ x_{m-1}^{2} + 2(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1})^{2} + 2[0.75x_{m-1} + 0.3(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1})]^{2} \right\}.$$

The expression in the carry brazas, briefly designated is a signature again the polynomial of the second degree relatively the with the positive second derivative, and are graph - parabola with convexity downward, so that it is again becausery to trace to the maximum only the extreme points of interval (Fig. 9.2):

$$x_{m-1} = 0 \quad \stackrel{\text{CN}}{=} \quad x_{m-1} = Z_{m-2}.$$

Key: (1) . and.

In the first case (when  $x_{m-1}=0$ ) we will obtain

$$W_{m-1,m}^* = 2Z_{m-2}^2 + 2(0.3Z_{m-2})^2 = 2.180Z_{m-2}^2$$

in the second case (when  $x_{m-1} = Z_{m-2}$ )

$$W_{m-1,m}^* = Z_{m-2}^2 + 2(0.75Z_{m-2})^2 = 2.125Z_{m-2}^2.$$

whence it is clear that the maximum again reaches when  $x_{m-1}=0$  and is equal to  $W^*_{m-1,\,m}(Z_{m-2})=2.180Z^2_{m-2}$ . I.e., at the next-to-last step/pitch it is necessary all rescurces to pack into branch II.

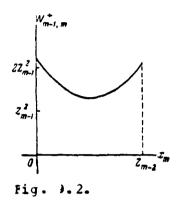
Let us pass toward  $(m-2)-\epsilon u$  to stap/pitch. It is here necessary to maximize the polynomial of the second degree

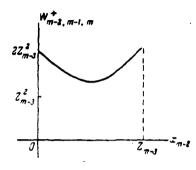
$$W_{m-2, m-1, m}^{+} = x_{m-2}^{2} + 2(Z_{m-3} - x_{m-2})^{2} + 2.18[0.75x_{m-2} + 0.3(Z_{m-3} - x_{m-2})]^{2}.$$

the corresponding parabola (as on any of the steps/pitches) will be again converted concave- $u_c$ , but thus time maximum will be reached not on the left, but on the light border of section (Fig. 9.3). Actually/really, assuming/section  $x_{m-2}=0$ , we will obtain

$$W_{m-2, m-1, m}^{+} = 2Z_{m-3}^{2} + 2.18(0.3Z_{m-3})^{2} \approx 2.20Z_{m-3}^{2},$$
 but when  $x_{m-2} = Z_{m-3}$   

$$W_{m-2, m-1, m}^{+} = Z_{m-3}^{2} + 2.18(0.75Z_{m-3})^{2} \approx 2.23Z_{m-3}^{2}.$$





F1.3. 9.3.

Page 70.

Consequently, conditional optimum control at (m-2)-th step/pitch will be  $x_{m-2}^*(Z_{m-3}) = Z_{m-3}.$ 

i.e., on this step/pitch optimum control lies in the fact that all available resources to pack into branch I. In this case we will obtain the conditional maximum income

$$W_{m-2, m-1, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-3}) \approx 2.23 Z_{m-3}^{2}.$$

It is obvious, in all relicantly stages the maximum will be always reached as in Fig. 9.3, at the right end/lead of the segment. Actually/really, for i<s-2 remotion  $W_{L(s),...,m}$  will take the form

$$W_{i,i+1,...,m}^{+} = x_i^2 + 2(Z_{i-1} - x_i)^2 + C[0.75x_i + 0.3(Z_{i-1} - x_i)]^2.$$

PAGE/30

DOC = 80151504

where coefficient C will be more than 2.18, since it with each step/pitch only increases. Increases optimum conditional control to the vary first step/pitch (lucius vely) it will remain

$$x_i(Z_{i-1}) = Z_{i-1}$$
  $(l = m-2, m-3, ...).$ 

and conditional maximum income for all steps/fitches, beginning from the i-th, it will be

$$W_{i,l+1,\ldots,m}^*(Z_{i-1}) = Z_{i-1}^2 + W_{i+1,\ldots,m}^*(0.75Z_{i-1}).$$

Thus, optimum control is round: it lies in the fact that at all steps/pitches, except rext-to-last and latter, to pack all resources into branch I, and at the lastes/last steps/pitches to pack all resources into branch II. Let us note that this solution is obtained independently neither of a number of steps/pitches m nor of the initial supply of resources Z<sub>0</sub>.

In order to visualize the type of optimum trajectory in the phase space, let us assign the concrete/specific/actual value of a number of steps/pitches m=5 (production process is planned/glided to 5 years).

Page 71.

Optimum trajectory is represented in Fig. 9.4. Optimum control process of resources consists of the following. To the first year all resources are packed into princh x and are reduced to 0.75  $Z_0$ . By the

DOC = 80151504 FAGE /31

second year - into the same wrancu I they are reduced to 0.56  $Z_{0}$ (there is no redistribution of Lesources, and therefore the second component/link of the second ster/ritch vanishes). On the third year again all rescurces are packed into the same branch I and are reduced to 0.42 Zo. On the forith year the policy varies: occurs the redistribution of resources (inclined trajectory phase), they all are packed into branch II and are reduced to 0.13 Zo. On the latter, the fifth, to year again all resources are packed into branch II; their remainder/residue at the end of the flifth year (and entire period) will be equal to 0.04 2g. buting this distribution of resources in the five-year plan will be obtained the maximum income, equal to  $W^{\bullet} = 2.27 Z_{o}$ .

Of this example optimum contact consisted of at each step/pitch packing of all resources enture into one or into another branch. Always whether this will be thus? Now we will ascertain that not always. For this change the LCLM of the function f(x) and g(y).

Example 2. Is planned/y\_lueu the activity of two branches of production with the I and Ai parad to 5 years (m=5). The "functions of the expenditure of resources"  $\varphi(x) = 0.75x$  and  $\psi(y) = 0.3y$  the same as in the previous example, but the "function of the income" of f(X) and g(y) of the replacement by ochers:

$$f(x) = 1 - e^{-x};$$
  $g(y) = 1 - e^{-2y}.$ 

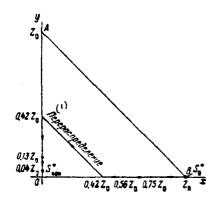


Fig. 3.4.

Kay: (1). Redistribution.

Page 72.

It is necessary to distribute the available rescurces/lifetimes in size/limension of  $Z_0=2$  between plancas I and II over the years.

simple form of the function f(x) and g(y), the solution was given in the analytical form; in this example to construct the analytical solution is difficult, and we will solve problem numerically. The meeting in the task functional dependences we will represent with the help of the graphs. Let at the deginating of the fifth year a quantity of resources be equal  $2_{+}$ . In case to find conditional optimum

FAGE/33

DOC = 80151504

control on the fifth step/pluon  $x*_5(Z_4)$ , it is necessary for each  $Z_4$  to find the maximum of the function

$$W_{\varsigma} = w_{\varsigma} = 1 - e^{-r_{\varsigma}} + 1 - e^{-2(Z_{\varsigma} - r_{\varsigma})} = 2 - [e^{-r_{\varsigma}} + e^{-2(Z_{\varsigma} - r_{\varsigma})}]. \quad (9.6)$$

With that fixed/recorded Z<sub>4</sub> this is - the function of argument  $x_5$ , convex upwards (Fig. 9.5). The maximum of this function (depending on value of Z<sub>4</sub>) can be reached element within segment (0, Z<sub>4</sub>) (as shown in Fig. 9.5a), or at his left and/lead (Fig. 9.5 b).

In order to find this maximum, let us differentiate expression (9.6) on  $x_5$ . If derivative becomes zero at certain point within the segment (0,  $Z_4$ ), then at this point reaches maximum we if outside - maximum reaches at  $x_5=0$ .

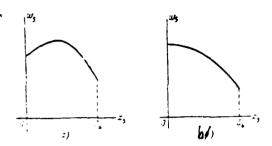


Fig. 1.5.

Page 73.

Differentiating (9.6) we have

$$\frac{\partial W_5}{\partial x_5} = e^{-x} - 2e^{-2(Z_5 - x_5)} = 0. \tag{9.7}$$

At this step/pitch equation (9.7) to us still it is possible to solve in the literal form; as nurther steps/pitches analogous problems we will solve numerically. From (9.7) we have

$$-x_5 = \ln 2 - 2Z_4 + 2x_5; \quad x_5 = \frac{2Z_4 - \ln 2}{3}.$$
 (9.8)

From expression (9.8) is solves that at  $Z_4 > \ln 2/2 \sim 0.347$  the maximum reaches within the segment (0, 24), at the point  $x_5^*(Z_4) = \frac{2Z_4 - \ln 2}{3}$ . (9.9)

When  $Z_1 < \frac{\ln 2}{2} \approx 0.347$  maximum reaches at the left end of the segment:  $x_5^*(Z_4) = 0.$ 

Thus, conditional optimum control on the fifth step / pitch is found:

DOC = 80151504 FAGE /35

$$x_{5}^{*}(Z_{4}) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{npu} \quad Z_{4} < \frac{\ln 2}{2}, \\ \frac{2Z_{4} - \ln 2}{3} & \text{npu} \quad Z_{4} > \frac{\ln 2}{2}. \end{cases}$$
 (9.10)

Kay: (1). with.

Let us find conditional maximum lacome in the fifth year. It is equal to

$$W_5^{\bullet}(Z_i) = 2 - \left\{ e^{-x_5^{\bullet}(Z_i)} + e^{-2\left[Z_4 - x_5^{\bullet}(Z_i)\right]} \right\}. \quad (9.11)$$

or, substituting (9.10) in (9.11),

$$W_{5}^{\bullet}(Z_{4}) = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{-2Z_{4}} & \text{npu} \quad Z_{4} \leq \frac{\ln 2}{2}, \\ 2 - \frac{3}{2} \sqrt[3]{2} e^{-\frac{2}{3} Z_{4}} & \text{npu} \quad Z_{4} > \frac{\ln 2}{2}. \end{cases}$$
(9.12)

Key: (1). with.

Since for us it is necessary many times to compute value W\*s, it will be convenient to construct and graph depending on Z4 (Fig. 9.6).

Page 74.

On the same graph (but on other scale) let us depict the dependence of conditional optimum control at the fifth step/pitch x\*5 cm Z4. With the construction of these two graphs are finished our all

matters, connected with the little stap/pitch. Subsequently, optimizing control at the routen step/pitch, we will only enter into these graphs with different values of 4..

de pass to the fourth step/pitch. The task of its conditional optimization we will solve numerically, being assigned the series/row of values Z<sub>3</sub> (supply of the resources, which remained after the third step/pitch). In order not to make excess work, let us explain, within what limits can be found Z<sub>3</sub>. Let us find the largest of possible of values Z<sub>3</sub>. It will be achieved/teached, if at the first three steps/pitches all resources will be equal to

 $Z_{3 \text{ max}} = Z_0 \cdot 0.75^3 = 0.844.$ 

The smallest supply of resources corresponds to the case when all resources at three first sters/ritches are imbedded in branch II:

 $Z_{0 \text{ min}} = Z_0 \cdot 0.3^3 = 0.054$ .

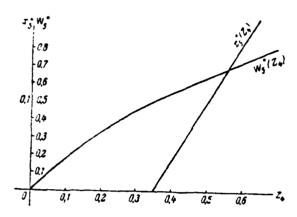


Fig. 3.6.

Page 15.

Thus, all possible values  $z_3$  and included in the section from 0.054 to 0.844. Let us assign in this section reference values of  $z_3$ :

$$Z_3 = 0.1$$
; 0.2; 0.3; 0.4; 0.5; 0.6; 0.7; 0.8 (9.13)

and for each of them let us limit conditional optimum control on the 4th step/pitch  $x*_*(Z_3)$  and conditional maximum income at two latter/last steps/pitches  $w*_{*,*}(\omega_3)$ . For this let us construct the series of the curves, which represent prize  $W_*$  at two latter/last steps/pitches (during any countrol on the fourth and with the optimum - on the fifth):

$$W_{4,5}^+ = w_4(Z_3, x_4) + W_5^*(0.75x_4 + 0.3(Z_3 - x_4)),$$

FAGE /38

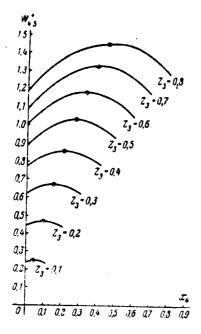
DOC = 80151504

where

$$w_4(Z_3, x_4) =$$
  
= 2 - [ $e^{-x_4} + e^{-2(Z_3-x_4)}$ ].

and  $W_5$  we find through the graph/curva Fig. 9.6, input into it with argument  $Z_4=0.75x_4+0.3$  ( $Z_3=x_4$ ). The curves of dependence  $W_{4,5}^+$  on  $x_4$  (with the given one  $Z_3$ ) are represented in Fig. 9.7. For each of these curves let us find point with the maximum ordinate and will mark by its small circle. The ordinate of this point for that corresponding to the curve  $Z_4$  is conditional maximum prize at two latter/last steps/pitcles  $W_{4,5}^*(Z_3)$ , and abscisse — conditional optimum control  $x*_4(Z_3)$ . After determining these values for each value from (9.13), let us construct the graph/diagrams of dependences  $W_{4,5}^*(Z_3)$  and  $x_{1}^*(Z_3)$  (Fig. 9.8).

By the construction or these two surves we finished our calculations with two latter, last steps/pitches: all information about them is already included in of two curves of Fig. 9.8.



Pig. 3.7.

Page 76.

walues  $Z_2$  lies/rests between 2.00.32=0.18 and 2.00.752=1.12. We are assigned in this interval by the series/row of reference values  $Z_2$ :

 $Z_2 = 0.3$ ; 0.5; 0.7; 0.9; 1.1

and for each of these values let us compute income on the third step/pitch depending or contact x, at this step/pitch according to the formula

$$w_3(Z_2, x_3) = 2 - [e^{-x_1} + e^{-2(Z_1 - x_3)}].$$

PAGE /40

DOC = 80151504

Then let us adjoin to it the diseasy optimized income at fourth and fifth steps/pitches  $W_{1.5}^{\bullet}(Z_i)$ . which we will determine on the graph/curve Pig. 3.8, entering it with the value

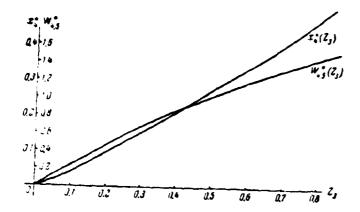
$$Z_4 = 0.75x_1 + 0.3(Z_2 - x_3)$$
.

and we will obtain the value

$$W_{1,4,5}^* = w_3(Z_2, x_3) + W_{1,5}^*(0.75x_1 + 0.3(Z_0 - x_1)).$$

for which let us again construct the graph/diagrams of dependence on x3 with that fixed/recorded Z2 (Fig. 9.9). For each of these curves let us again find the maximum (in the figure it is noted by small circle) and after this will construct the dependence of the conditional optimum control at the third step/pitch x\*, and of the corresponding to condition maximum income at three latter/last steps/pitches \*\*3.4.5 on Z2 (Fig. 9.10).

FAGE / 3h

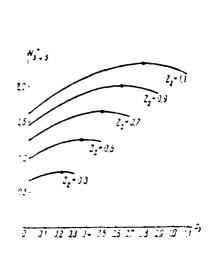


Pig. J.8.

DOC = 80 15 1504

FAGE /42

Page 17.



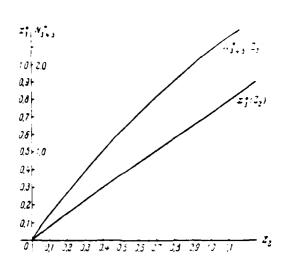


Fig. 3.9.

Fig. 9.10.

Page 18.

Analogously is solved the ribbles of the conditional optimization of the second stap/patch: are varied values  $Z_1$  from 2.0.3=0.6 to 2.0.75=1.5:

 $Z_1 = 0.6$ ; 0.9; 1.2; 1.5.

Income at the second step/place will be

 $w_2(Z_1, x_2) = 2 - [e^{-x_1} + e^{-2(Z_1 - x_1)}].$ 

FAGE /43

DOC = 30151504

To it is adjoined the conditional maximum income W\*3.4.5 on the graph/curve Fig. 9.10 with one may ut

$$Z_2 = 0.75x_2 + 0.3(Z_1 - x_2)$$
:

it is obtained value  $W_{0,1,4,5,\ldots}^*$  and again they are constructed graphs (Fig. 9.11). On each conve is located the maximum and are constructed two curves:  $x*_2(2_1)$  and  $a*_2.3.4.5(2_1)$  (Fig. 9.12).

It remained to plan cue that stap/pitch. This - already more easy problem, since value  $z_0$ , with which we begin this step/pitch, it is accurately known ( $Z_0=2$ ) and it must not be varied. Therefore for the first step/pitch is constructed only one curve dependence  $W_{1,2,3,4,5}^+$  on  $x_1$  (Fig. 9.13), where

$$|W_{-2,3,4,5}^{+}| = w_1(Z_0, x_1) + W_{2,3,4,5}^{\bullet}(Z_1) = = 2 - \left[e^{-x_1} + e^{-2\cdot Z_0 - x_{11}}\right] + W_{2,3,4,5}^{\bullet}(Z_1),$$

and latter/last term is located turodyn the graph/curve Fig. 9.12 with  $Z_1 = 0.75\,r_1 + 0.3\,(Z_0 - x_1).$ 

where  $Z_0 = 2$ .

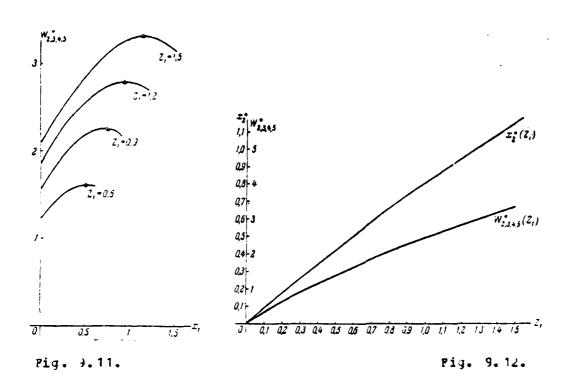
Determining in the unique curve of Fig. 9.13 maximum, we find (no longer conditional) optimum control on the first step/pitch  $x*_1=1.6$  and corresponding maximum income in all five years

$$W^{\bullet} = W^{\bullet}_{1, 2, 3, 4, 5} = 4.35.$$

COC = 80151504

FAGE / 44

Page 79.



Fage 30.

After this, as always in the method of dynamic programming, it is necessary to construct complete optimum control

$$X^{\bullet} = (x_1^{\bullet}, x_2^{\bullet}, x_3^{\bullet}, x_4^{\bullet}, x_5^{\bullet}),$$

going in the opposite direction: Flow the first step/pitch toward the fifth.

Knowing optimum correct on the first step/pitch

$$x_1^* = 1.60.$$

we find the corresponding to it supply or rescurces toward the end of the first step/pitch:

$$Z_1^* = 0.75x_1^* + 0.3(Z_0 - x_1^*) = 1.32.$$

Entering with this value of  $Z_1$  and graph  $x*_2(Z)$  (see Fig. 9.12), we find optimum control on the Second Step/pitch:

$$x_2 = 1.02.$$

The ramainder/residue of resources toward the end of the second step/pitch will be

$$Z_2^{\bullet} = 0.75x_2^{\bullet} + 0.3(Z_1^{\bullet} - x_2^{\bullet}) = 0.86.$$

with this value of  $Z_2$  we enter note graph  $x*_3(Z_2)$  (on Fig. 9.10) and find optimum control on the unity stap/pirch:

$$x_3^* = 0.62.$$

The ramainder/residue of resources after the third step/pitch will be  $Z*_3\approx0.75x*_3*0.3(Z*_2-x*_3)=0.54$ . Talough the graph/curve Fig. 9.8 we find optimum control on the Louren step/pitch

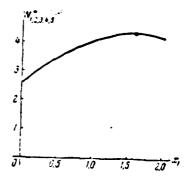
$$x_4^{\bullet} = 0.30.$$

After the fourth step/fitch the remainder/residue is equal to

$$Z_4^{\bullet} = 0.75 \, r_4^{\bullet} + 0.3 \, (Z_3^{\bullet} - x_4) = 0.30.$$

With this value of Z, we enter into graph  $x*_5(Z_4)$  (see Fig. 9.6) and find optimum control on the range last step/pitch

$$x_{5}^{*}=0.$$



Pig. 3.13.

END SECTION.

DOC = 80151505 FAGE 147

Fage 31.

Thus, planning/gliding process is completed. Is found the optimum control, which indicates, now many resources from the available supply  $Z_0=2$  it is necessary to pack into branch I over the years:

$$X^* = (1.60; 1.02; 0.62; 0.30; 0).$$

Taking into account that the supplies of the rescurces before beginning each year are known:

$$Z_0 = 2$$
;  $Z_1^* = 1.32$ ;  $Z_2^* = 0.86$ ;  $Z_3^* = 0.54$ ;  $Z_1^* = 0.30$ .

we automatically obtain quantities of resources, packed over the years into branch II:

$$y_1^* = Z_0 - x_1^* = 0.40;$$
  $y_2^* = Z_1^* - x_2^* = 0.30;$   
 $y_3^* = Z_2^* - x_3^* = 0.24;$   $y_4^* = Z_3^* - x_1^* = 0.24;$   
 $y_5^* = Z_4^* - x_5^* = 0.30.$ 

Thus, it is possible to formulate the following recommendations regarding the optimum distribution of resources. From the available in the beginning period of the  $\sup_{P} \sup_{P} |P|$  of resources  $Z_0=2$  and remaining resources at the end of each year it is necessary to pack over the years in branch the I and II following sums:

FAGE 148

Гол 1-й 2-й 3-й 4-й 5-й 1,60 1,02 0,62 0,30 0 II 0,40 0,30 0,24 0,24 0,30	Год (	1,60	1,02	0,62	0,30	0
---	----------	------	------	------	------	---

During this planning/yundawy will be obtained maximal return in 5 years, the equal to

$$W_{1,2,3,4,5}^{\bullet} = 4.35.$$

Remainder/residue of resources at the end of the period will be equal to

$$0.3 \cdot 0.30 = 0.09$$

Pig. 9.14 depicts the optimum trajectory in the phase space, which corresponds to this distribution of rescurces. Point S\*0 on the hypotenuse of triangle AOB to presents the optimum initial distribution of resources with the sharp predominance to the side of branch I. The first component/time of proken line corresponds to the expenditure of rescurces in the first year.

Page 32.

The following components/liles are joined they pair-wise and represent redistribution and expenditure of rescurces on the 2nd, 3rd, 4th and 5th years. Latter/lest component/link lies/rests on axis Cy; this means that on the bin rear of production process all resources are packed into branch II. Point  $S_{\text{non}}^*$  represents the remainder/residue of resources  $\Delta *_3 = 0.09$ , which is obtained during the optimum planning/gliding.

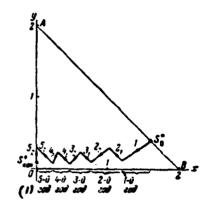


Fig. 9.14.

Key: (1). year.

DOC = 80151505 FAGE 150

§ 10. Modifications of the task about the distribution of resources/lifetimes.

the examined in the previous paragraphs task about the distribution of resources/limetimes has many modifications. Some of them comparatively differ limited rich one simplest task, examined into § 8; others so differ from it in their verbal/literary setting, which is sometimes difficult to discover in them general/common/total features. In this paragraph and in those following (§§ 11.12) we will consider the series/row of the versions of similar tasks.

a. Distribution of resources/liratimes in haterogeneous stages. In the task § 8 stages (steps/pitches) were "uniform" in the sense that resources x and y, included respectively in branch I and II, in any stage gave one and the same income and were reduced in an identical way independent or the number of stage.

Page 33.

The natural generalization of this simplest task is the case when income and loss/defrectation of resources in different stages are dissimilar: resources x, f, impedded in branch I and II, give on the i-th income  $f_t(x)$ ,  $g_t(y)$  and they are reduced to  $g_t(x) \leqslant x$ ,  $\psi_t(y) \leqslant y$ .

DOC = 80151505 FAGE /5/

dow can arise this here openenty? By different methods. For example, profitableness can uspend on the common level of the development of production, achieved/reached to the defined period; or the condition of production (as, set as say, in the agriculture) they can depend on season.

For the solution of the problem of distributing the resources/lifetimes by the method of dynamic programming this circumstance - uniformity or networpanenty stage- is completely unessential. Since the problem of the optimization of control nevertheless is solved in Stages, at is completely unimportant, are identical functions  $f_i(x)$ ,  $g_i(y)$ ,  $\varphi_l(x)$ ,  $\psi_l(y)$  in the different stages or they are different.

The overall diagram of the solution is reduced to the consecutive use/application of the following formulas for the conditional optimum income in several latter/last stages:

FAGE 152

$$\begin{split} & W_{m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-1}) = \max_{0 < x_{m} < Z_{m-1}} \left\{ f_{m}(x_{m}) + g_{m}(Z_{m-1} - x_{m}) \right\}; \\ & W_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{0 < x_{m-1} < Z_{m-2}} \left\{ f_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + \right. \\ & + g_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) + W_{m}^{\bullet}(\phi_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + \right. \\ & \left. + \psi_{m+1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) \right) \right\}; \\ & W_{i, i+1, \dots, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{i-1}) = \max_{0 < x_{i} < Z_{i-1}} \left\{ f_{i}(x_{i}) + g_{i}(Z_{i-1} - x_{i}) + \right. \\ & \left. + W_{i+1, \dots, m}^{\bullet}(\phi_{i}(x_{i}) + \psi_{i}(Z_{i-1} - x_{i})) \right\}. \end{split}$$

with the incidental definition or the conditional optimum controls:

$$x_{m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-1}), x_{m-1}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2}), \ldots, x_{1}^{\bullet}(Z_{n}).$$

After this, as always, is constituted optimum control, beginning from the first stage and ending with the latter. In this construction of there is no difference with the case of uniform stages.

Page 34.

5. Task about redundanc, or resources/lifetimes. Task is placed as follows. There is only one pranch of production and certain supply of resources  $Z_0$ , which can be packed into the production not wholly, but partially be reserved. Being an the production in the i stage, a quantity of resources x impedient gives andone  $f_i(x)$  and and it is reduced to  $z_i(x) < x$ . It is necessar, to rationally distribute the available and remaining resources an a stages in order to become maximum aggregate profit w.

FAGE 153

It is not difficult to ascertain that this task is reduced to previous. Actually/really, the asserved rescurces can be considered "imbedded" in certain fictitious "second pranch" of production, in which the resources are not expended, but also they do not give the income:

$$g_i(y) = 0; \quad \psi_i(y) = y \qquad (i = 1, 2, ..., m).$$

Taking into account this condition problem is solved in exactly the same way just as the task or discributing the resources/lifetimes.

in the phase space, will take the room, represented in Fig. 10.1. The sections of the "redistribution of resources" will be, as before they are parallel to line AE, while was sections of the "consumption of resources" - are parallel to the axis of abscissas and are directed to the left. The latter/last component/link of broken line will always lie/rest on the axis of abscissas, since further redundancy of resources a sense does not have.

Let us consider a special case of the task about the radundancy when in all stages

$$v_i(x) = 0$$
.

i.e. the imbedded resources are expended/consumed by pillar. Then the

task of the redundancy of resources is reduced to finding of the maximum of the following function m of arguments:

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i(x_i), \qquad (10.1)$$

where  $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m$  limited by the conficions

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \leqslant Z_0; \tag{10.2}$$

$$x_i \geqslant 0. \tag{10.3}$$

$$x_i \geqslant 0. \tag{10.3}$$

FAGE 155

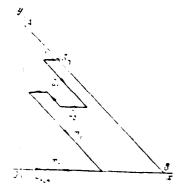


Fig. 10.1.

Fage d5.

If we income  $f_i(x)$  (as this regret assume) is the nondecreasing function of the intedded resources x, onen the sign of equality in formula (10.2) can be rejected/thrown, since under these conditions to expend/consume not all resources, but only their part is disadvantageous.

The trajectory of point S in the phase space will appear, as shown in Fig. 10.2 - each nonliquital section reaches the axis of ordinates.

Let us do some observations about the method of the solution of problem. Above we saw that she was reduced to the determination of

the maximum of function (10.1). It can seem that thereby the task is simplified, according to this implession illustry. Indeed generally the task of finding the maximum of the function of many arguments is rot an easy one. Let us recarl (see y 1) that any task of optimum control is always reduced to finding the maximum (minimum) of the function of many arguments, and pascissly in order to avoid the connected arguments, and precise, in order to avoid connected with this difficulties, we resort to the decade of dynamic programming. After giving here formula (16.1), we did not intend to facilitate the task of dynamic programming, acted raducing it to the task of the determination of the maximum or runction (10.1). On the contrary, for the solution of the problem of the determination of the maximum (minimum) of function of type (10.1) with conditions (10.2) and (10.3) (wherever this task not it arosa), can prove to be most adequate/approaching precisely the mathod of dynamic programming. By the use/application of this mathou in this case we bring the multidimensional task of finding the maximum of the function of many variable/alternating to the repeated determination of the maximum of the function of one variable/auternating, which is considerably easier.

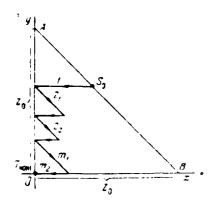


Fig. 10.2.

Page 36.

Let us note, however, that some simplest cases of the task of the redundancy of rescurces admit elementary solution, also, without the use/application of a method of dynamic programming. To them belongs, for example, simplest case and the "function of income" in all stages is one and the same:

$$f_1(x) = f_2(x) = \dots = f_m(x) = f(x).$$

moreover resources in each staye are expended/consumed completely:

$$\varphi_1(x) = \varphi_2(x) = \dots = \varphi_m(x) = 0.$$

it is possible to demonstrate that if function f(x) - function monotonically increasing and is convex upward (Fig. 10.3), then the maximum of expression (10.1) reaches, when resources are divided into equal parts between all stayes:

FAGE 154

$$x_1^{\bullet} = x_2^{\bullet} = \dots$$
$$\dots = x_m^{\bullet} = \frac{Z_0}{m}.$$

tetween several (more than  $u_i$  two) branches. The task about the distribution of resources/limes allows/assumes generalization to the case when resources are distributed not between two, but between k branches:

1. II. . . . . 
$$(k)$$
.

moreover for each (j-th) branch they are preset: the "function of income"

$$f_{i}^{(j)}(x)$$
.

expressing the income, given  $v_f$  a quantity of resources x, imbedded in the j-th branch at the large/riton, and the "function of expenditure"

$$\varphi(t)(x) \leqslant (x).$$

showing, to which value decreases a quantity of resources x, imbedded in the j-th branch at the rate/ratch.

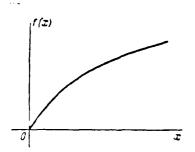


Fig. 10.3.

Page 87.

Let us construct for this case phase space. In the case of distributing the rescurces according to two branches such phase space was triangle AOB (see Fig. v. 1, v. 2, etc.). For the case of several branches it is possible as the phase space to consider the multilimensional generalization of triangle (which is conventionally designated as "simplex"), namely the point set of k- graduated space, which satisfy the conditions:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \sum_{j} x^{(j)} \leqslant Z_{0}; \quad x^{(j)} \geqslant 0 \\ ((j = 1, 11, \ldots, (k)).) \end{array} \right\} (10.4)$$

In the case of the space of three measurements (which corresponds to the distribution of rescurces according to three branches) simplex will take the form of tetrahedron ABCO (Fig. 10.4) whose three

edges/fins, that converge in the beginning of coordinates, are equal to Z<sub>0</sub>. The process of distributing the resources, as in the two-dimensional case, it can be unviled into the components/links, which correspond to the "redistribution of resources" and to the "expenditure of resources", acreever on the first components/links point S moves on the plane, accurated ASC, and on the second it moves, receiving from plane ABC into the depth or simplex.

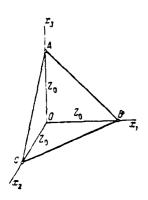


Fig. 10.4.

§ 11. Task about the distribution of resources/lifetimes with the enclosure of incomes into the production.

Until now, in all tasks examined about the distribution of resources/lifetimes we examined the "licome", yielded by production, completely independent of the discributed basic means (it even could be expressed in other unit,, for example resources/lifetimes - in the man-hours, and income - in the rubles or in the meters of fabric).

Fage 88.

In this paragraph we will consider that case when income can (in full or in part) be packed into the production together with the basic means. For this it goes without saying the income and basic means must be given to one equivalent (for example, to the money).

Depending on situation this task can be placed differently, with the different criteria W. Fer example, it is possible to pack into the production entire income or its only certain of fraction/portion. It is possible to seek such control which ensures maximum total net income from m stages. It is possible to seek such control which converts into the maximum the total sum of resources (switching on income and preserved basic means) after m stages. Are possible other

FAGE 117

formulations of the problem. Here we will show the diagram of the solution by the method of the agramic programming of several simplest tasks of such type.

a. Let us consider case when income is packed into production completely, moreover is maximized sum of all means (basic means plus income) after m stage.

In this case criterion **V** is the sum of all rescurces, which were preserved in both branches at the time of stage, plus the income, given by both branches in this stage.

The criterion wir quescion is a special case of the additive criterion: it entire is acquired in the last stage, i.e.,  $W=w_m$ , and in all previous stages its increases  $w_i$  are equal to zero.

Since all resources (and the remainder/residue of bases, and income) are packed into the resourction and are considered in criterion W on the equal bases/lases, then to us to unnecessarily here suild-in separately the "functions of income"  $f_i(x)$ ,  $g_i(y)$  and the "functions of expenditure"  $g_i(x)$ ,  $\phi_i(y)$ , and is sufficient to introduce two functions

$$F_i(\mathbf{x}), \quad G_i(\mathbf{y}), \tag{11.1}$$

showing, how many resources (remainder/residue of bases plus income)

we will have at the end of the Lagrage, after putting in the beginning of this stage a quantity of resources x into the first branch and u the secondly. Let us have functions  $F_r(\dot{x})$ ,  $G_r(y)$  the "functions of a change in the resources" in the i stage. Let us note that is possible any of the relationships/ratios:

$$F_i(x) \triangleleft x$$
;  $F_i(x) \ni x$ ,  $F_i(x) \triangleright x$ 

(it is analogous for  $G_{i}(y)$ ).

Page 39.

let us consider the passe space, which corresponds to this task (Fig. 11.1). Such space will be no longer triangle AOB (as in the tasks without the enclosure of incomes, but entire first quadrant xOy (resources can not only be reduced, but also increase).

Trajectory as before consists or the series/row of components/links: to each stage (except the first, corresponds the pair of the components/links: the first - "reduscribution of resources", when point S is moved in parallel AB; the second - "expenditure and the acquisition of resources", during which joint S can move in any direction. In contrast to all previous examples, here obtaining the "final income" of W is connected only with one, latter itself, component/link m2, which in Fig. 11.1 is isolated with heavy arrow.

In this case the value of carterion w is directly evident on the

PAGE 164

drawing - this is the sum of auscussa and ordinate of point  $S_{\rm kon}$  corresponding to final stace system. Thus, the task of optimum control can be formulated so: to select this trajectory of point in the phase space in order to deduce it as a result of the m step/pitch for straight line  $A_{\rm kon}B_{\rm kon}$  paralled ab and distant behind the origin of coordinates so far, as soon as thus will be possibly. The value of criterion W is represented as the segment, intercepted/detached for each of the axes of straight line  $A_{\rm kon}B_{\rm con}$ .

Let us construct the unagram of the solution of this problem by the method of dynamic programming without the comprehensive verbal/literary explanations, since the entity of method is sufficiently clear from provious. During function  $F_i(x)$ ,  $G_i(y)$  thus far we will superimpose no limitations.

PAGE/65

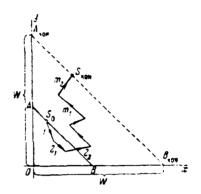


Fig. 11.1.

Paga 30.

1. We fix/record issue (m-1)-th scep/pitch (preserved resource plus income)  $Z_{m-1}$  Conditional optimum control  $N_m^*(Z_{m-1})$  - that with which will be maximum a total quantity of rescurces (basic means of plus return), after the m step/pitch

$$w_m(Z_{m-1}) = Z_m(Z_{m-1}). \tag{11.2}$$

But, taking into account formulas (11.1), it is possible to write

$$w_m(Z_{m-1}) = F_m(x_m) + G_m(Z_{m-1} - x_m).$$

Conditional optimum control on a stap/pitch  $x_m^*(\mathbb{Z}_{m+1})$  will be located from condition

$$W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_{m} \le Z_{m-1}} \left[ F_{m}(x_{m}) + G_{m}(Z_{m-1} - x_{m}) \right]. \quad (11.3)$$

300 = 80151505

2. We fix/record issue (m-2) -th step/pitch  $Z_{m-2}$ . Conditional optimum control  $x_{m-1}^*(Z_{m-2})$  is Loudu from the condition

$$W_{m-1,m}^{*}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{0 \le x_{m-1} < Z_{m-2}} \left\{ W_{m}^{*} \left( F_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + G_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) \right) \right\}$$
(11.4)

and so forth.

3. We fix/record  $Z_{i-1}$  Committional optimum control  $x_i^*(Z_{i-1})$  is found from the condition

$$W_{i, i+1, \dots, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{i-1}) = \max_{0 < x_i < Z_{i-1}} \{W_{i+1, \dots, m}^{\bullet}(F_i(x_i) + G_i(Z_{i-1} - x_i))\}$$
(11.5)

and so forth.

4. Optimum control at rist step/pitch x\*; and maximum value of prize W are found from condition

$$W^* = W_{1, 2, \dots, m}^* = \max_{0 \le x_1 \le Z_0} \{W_{2, \dots, m}^* (F_1(x_1) + G_1(Z_0 - x_1))\}.$$

5. Issue of the first swap/parch during the optimum control:

$$Z_1^* = F_1(x_1^*) + G_1(Z_0 - x_1^*).$$

optimum control at the second step/pitch:

$$x_2^{\bullet} = x_2^{\bullet}(Z_1^{\bullet}).$$

Issue of the second ster/patch with the optimum of the controls:

PAGE 157

DOC = 80151505

$$Z_2^* = F_2(x_2^*) + G_2(Z_1^* - x_2^*)$$

and so forth to the latter/last step/pitch.

Page 31.

Is such the diagram of the solution of problem by the method of dynamic programming with any form of the function of a change in resources  $F_i(x)$ .  $G_i(y)$ . However, if we on these functions superimpose some (very natural) limitations, this diagram can be highly simplified.

Let us assume that all lunctions

$$F_i(x)$$
,  $G_i(y)$   $(i = 1, \ldots, m)$ 

are the nondecreasing functions of their arguments (i.e. that with an increase in the quantity or impedued resources the sum of income and remaining resources toward the end of the stage it cannot decrease).

Let us show that under these conditions the maximum prize at the latter/last step/pitch is non-decreasing function from the issue of each step/pitch (sum of resources in its end/lead).

Let us consider maximum prize wash the sum of resources (remainder/residue plus income) at the end (i-1) -th stage is equal

FAGE 168

to  $Z_{i-1}$ . Since prize is acquired this in the latter/last stage, the nevertheless, to examine this place for entire process, either only for the latter/last stage, or for all stages, beginning from the i-th. Let us select the latter: we will examine maximum prize for all stages, beginning from the i-th as function from  $Z_{i-1}$  designating it, as always

$$W_{i, i+1, \ldots, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{i-1}).$$

Let us demonstrate that this function not decreasing. Proof we will conduct by full/total/complete induction, but not from i to i+1, as this is done usually, but on the contrary, from i+1 to i (in accordance with the "reverse" course of the process of dynamic programming).

Let us assume that the rovem property is correct for i+1, i.e., the function

$$W_{l+1,\ldots,m}^{\bullet}(Z_l)$$

is the nondecreasing function of its argument  $Z_i$  (this it means: the greater the resources, switching on income and tasic means, it was preserved to the issue of the 1 step/pitch, the greater there will be the income at the end). Let us usuanstrate that then by nondecreasing function it will be and

$$W_{l_1, l+1, \ldots, m}^*(Z_{l-1}).$$

Page 32.

FAGE/69

DOC = 80151505

Actually/really, according to remula (11.5),  $W_{i,(t+1,\ldots,m)}^*(Z_{i+1})$  is the maximum of the expression

$$W_{t+1,...,m}^{\bullet}(F_t(x_t) + G_t(Z_{t-1} - x_t)).$$
 (11.6)

Let us show that expression (11.6) is nondecreasing function  $Z_{t-1}$  then it will be it is clear that as its maximum value  $W_{t+1,\ldots,m}^{*}(Z_{t-1})$  with increase  $Z_{t-1}$  decrease cannot.

Let us fix some value  $Z_{i-1}$ . Let for this value  $Z_{i-1}$  expression (11.6) reach maximum in  $x_i$ . Equal to  $W^*_{i_1,i_2,\dots,m}(Z_{i-1})$  during the specific control (distribution or resources)  $x_i^*$ . Let us give now to value  $Z_{i-1}$  certain positive inclease  $iZ_i$ , was formed certain surplus of resources, which we can distribute between branches I and II, after increasing a quantity of resources, imbedded either in one or in another branch, or into that and allother immediately. Since function  $F_i(x)$ ,  $G_i(y)$  not decreasing, the from this "addition" of resources each of the components/terms/addends under the sign of function (11.6) can only be increased, but not shape is less.

what in this case will be with function (11.6)? According to assumption these are - function is: it means, and with increase  $Z_{i-1}$  it be reduced cannot. Thus, transition from i+1 to i is proved.

DOC = 80151505 PAGE/90

Let us show now that our property is correct for i+1=m, i.e., for the latter/last step/pitch. This is proven very simply. Prize at the latter/last step/pitch during the optimum control is the maximum of the expression

$$T_{m^{1,N}m}) + G_{m}(Z_{m-1} - X_{m})$$

and, naturally, to eat nondecreasing function from  $Z_{m-1}$  (this recently it was shown for any value of i, and also, therefore, for i=m). Thus,  $W_m(Z_{m-1})$  is nondecreasing function  $Z_{m-1}$  and means, according to the principle of rule/total/complete induction, and any of the prizes  $W_{n+1}^{*} = m(Z_{n-1}) = n$  on the prize of the

Page 93.

Prom that proved escape/ensus very simple recommendations regarding the optimum control. actually/really, if final prize  $\psi_n^*$  is nondecreasing function from the total sum of resources, realized on the issue of each step/pitch, then optimum control lies in the fact that on the issue of each step/pitch individually to obtain the maximum value of this sim of resources.

This means that in this special case the "interests" of operation as a whole coincide with the "interests" of each single step/pitch. The rational planning/ylliding of entire operation is reduced to optimize each step/pitch individually, without worrying

PAGE / 91

about the others.

This special feature/peculiarity leads to the fact that the process of producing the optimum control strongly is simplified. Actually/really, greater there is no necessity to fix/record the results of each previous ster/price and to draw entire chain/network of conditional optimum controls from the latter/last step/pitch toward the first. It is possible to directly optimize step by step from the beginning toward the end. At the first step/pitch to take such control x<sub>1</sub>=x\*<sub>1</sub>, during which is converted into the maximum the sum of resources Z<sub>1</sub>:

$$Z_{1}^{\bullet} = \max_{0 \leq x_{1} \leq \hat{Z}_{0}} \{F_{1}(x_{1}) + G_{1}(Z_{0} - x_{1})\};$$

on the second - the control  $z_2=x*_2$ , during which it is converted into maximum  $z_2$ :

$$Z_{2}^{\bullet} = \max_{0 < x_{2} < Z_{1}^{\bullet}} \{ F_{2}(x_{2}) + G_{2}(Z_{1}^{\bullet} - x_{1}) \}$$

and so forth to the end/lead.

Thus, with nondecreasin, runctions  $F_i(x)$ .  $G_i(y)$  stated by us problem of the exterior cnly takes the form of task of dynamic programming, and actually - it is much simpler it.

Similar "degenerate" tasks of the dynamic programming where the optimum control lies in the fact that to optimize each ethane,

without worrying about the others, frequently they are encountered in practice. If, without having rocused attention on this special feature/peculiarity, to solve them nevertheless by the method of dynamic programming, the solution it goes without saying will be obtained accurate, but will require many times more time, than it is necessary.

Page 94.

Let us do one additional observation. At first glance it can seem that the superimposed during runction  $F_i(x)$ ,  $G_i(y)$  condition — so that they would be nondiminishing — is satisfied in all in practice conceivable cases. However, it is possible to give the practical tasks, in which it is not implemented. Let us consider, for example, the case, when one of the "planches" of production is storage of the parishable goods (vegetables, on the storage. This branch yields only the losses, connected with the losses of goods during their storage. Let us designate  $F_i(x) < x$  the value of commodities, which were being stocked, at the end of the i-th stage, if in the beginning of stage it was x. Always whether this runction will be monotons? No, not always. It is possible to vibualize such situation when with the overload of storage of some than certain critical value function F(x) begins to decrease (for example, due to deterioration in storage conditions). In similar cases is necessary to solve protlem the

everall diagram of dynamic programming as this was shown above.

o. Let us consider case when into production as before is packed entire income, but criterion and her income in mustage (preserved tasic means are not considered).

Let be preset to the "function of income"  $f_i(x), g_i(y)$  and to the "function of expenditure"  $\varphi_i(x), \psi_i(y)$  for each stage (1=1, ..., m).

Let us show that if function  $f_m(x)$ ,  $g_m(y)$  - the "function of incoma" in the latter/last stays - not decreasing, then task is reduced to examined in point/item A, namely to the maximization of total prize (remaining resource plus income) afterward (m-1) -th stage. Actually/really, conditional maximum prize at the latter/last step/pitch will be

$$W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_{m} \le Z_{m-1}} \{ f_{m}(x) + g_{m}(Z_{m-1} - x_{m}) \}. \quad (11.7)$$

It is possible to demonstrate (analogously how it was done in point/item a) that function  $W_m^*(Z_{m-1})$  is the nondecreasing function of its argument, and its maximum reaches when  $Z_{m-1}$  it reaches its maximum value. Thus, for the determination of optimum control is sufficient to solve task "a" for the lessures

FACE 174

$$F_i(x) = f_i(x) + \varphi_i(x).$$

$$G_i(y) = g_i(y) + \varphi_i(y)$$

and then to separately find oftimum control on the m step/pitch, on the basis of formula (11.7).

Fage #5.

If functions  $F_i(x)$ ,  $G_i(y)$   $(i=1,\ldots,m-1)$  will also be nondecreasing, then task, as in the preceding case, it will prove to be degenerate.

If functions  $f_m(x)$ ,  $g_m(y)$  are not mondecreasing, then reducing to task "a" becomes already impossible and, is necessary to rescribe the overall diagram of synamic programming. To reader one should as the useful exercise sketch this diagram.

c. Let us consider case when income, obtained in each stage, is packed into production not completely, but partially, moreover is maximized full/total/complete her income in all stages plus remainder/residue of resources after a stage.

In this task, as if the ordinary task the distributions of resources/lifetimes, must be present to the "function of income"

$$f_i(x)$$
,  $g_i(y)$   $(l = 1, 2, ..., m)$ 

and the "function of expendicure"

$$\varphi_l(y) \leqslant x$$
;  $\psi_l(y) \leqslant y$   $(l = 1, 2, \ldots, m)$ .

Furthermore, must be present to the "function of enclosure"  $R_l(\xi) \leqslant \xi \quad (l=1,\ldots,m-1),$ 

packed into the production on one following, (i+1) -th, stage.

As the phase space let us consider no longer first quadrant xCy of plane, but first octant xOyê or inrae-dimensional space (Fig. 11.2). Along the axes Cx and OY as before are plotted/deposited the resources, which are located in planchas I and II; along the axis Oê - total income, yielded by poth planchas. Region So of the initial states of system - as before nipotenies AB of triangle AOB in plane xOy. All stages, except the first, are subdivided into two components/links: on the first component/link the resources (preserved in both branches plus the specific part of the income of the previous stage) are requisitionated between the branches; on the second component/link occurs the expanditure of resources and the acquisition of income. Fig. 41.2 shows two stages: the first consists only of one component/link, the second - of two.

Page 16.

Let us consider values  $x_1'=q_1(x_1)\leqslant x_1,y_1'=\psi_1(y_1)\leqslant y_1$  - the resources, which were preserved in branches one I and II toward the end first stage where  $x_1$ ,  $y_1$  - coordinates or point  $S_0$  - resources, imbedded in branch I and II during the interst stage;  $\xi_1=f_1(x_1)+g_1(y_1)$  - income, brought by both branches during the first stage. During the first stage point  $S_0$  which represents the state of system, shifts from the initial state  $S_0$  - point on the about plane xOy with the coordinates  $(x_1,y_1,0)$  - into point K with the coordinates

$$x'_1 = \varphi_1(x_1) \leqslant x_1,$$
  

$$y'_1 = \psi_1(y_1) \leqslant y_1,$$
  

$$\xi_1 = f_1(x_1) + g_1(y_1).$$

Then on the first component/link of second stage  $(2_1)$  occurs the enclosure of the part of the income and the redistribution of the resources between branches 1 and 11. Point S is moved again to plane xOy into point M with the occurantates  $(x_2, y_2, 0)$ , moreover

$$x_2 + y_2 = x_1' + y_1' + R_1(\xi_1)$$

Further again goes the expenditure of resources and the acquisition of income (component/link  $2_{24}$ , then again redistribution, etc.

Jur task - of deducing point 5, which represents the state of system, on the plane

$$x + y + \xi = C$$

DOC = 80151505 FAGE 147

with the highest possible value of parameter C.

Let us sketch the diagram of the solution of problem by the method of dynamic programming.

Let us note first of all, that if is fixed/recorded issue (i-1)-th stage, then for the following (the i-th) is essential only the total sum of the redistributed resources

$$Z_{i-1} = x'_{i-1} + y'_{i-1} + R_{i-1}(\xi_{i-1}).$$

and therefore despite the ract that the state of system was represented as point in the characteristic nal space, we will vary the values only of one parameter  $Z_{i-1}$ .

FAGE 178

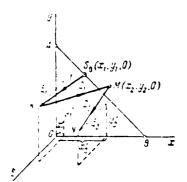


Fig. 11.2.

Fage 37.

"control" on the i stage (just as in the previously tasks of distributing the rescurces/literames examined) will consist of the selection of value x<sub>i</sub> - quantity of resources, imbedded in branch I in the i stage. Prize W for entire process naturally is divided/marked off into m or the components/terms/addends:

$$W = w_1 + w_2 + \ldots + w_{m-1} + w_m. \tag{11.8}$$

where  $w_i$  with i=1, 2, ..., m-1 are the net income, not packed into the production:

$$\boldsymbol{w}_{l} = \boldsymbol{\xi}_{l} - \boldsymbol{R}_{l}(\boldsymbol{\xi}_{l}),$$

and at the m step/pitch - is au\_\_\_e nec income from the m step/pitch plus the remainder/residue or the impedded resources:

$$\boldsymbol{w}_{m} = \boldsymbol{\xi}_{m} + \boldsymbol{x}_{m}' + \boldsymbol{y}_{m}'.$$

DOC = 80151505 FAGE 179

Step by ster optimization we will conduct according to the standard diagram.

1. We fix/record value  $Z_{m-1}$  (preserved rescurces plus packed part of income), which characterizes issue (m-1) -th of step/pitch. Conditional optimum control  $x_m(Z_{m-1})$  on the m step/pitch will be located from the condition

$$\begin{aligned} W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}) &= \max_{0 < x_{m} < Z_{m-1}} \{w_{m}\} = \\ &= \max_{0 < x_{m} < Z_{m-1}} \{f_{m}(x_{m}) + g_{m}(Z_{m-1} - x_{m}) + \\ &+ \gamma_{m}(x_{m}) + \gamma_{m}(Z_{m-1} - x_{m})\}. \end{aligned}$$

- 2. Let us fix issue or (m-2) -th of step  $Z_{m-2}$ . In order to find conditional optimum control on (m-1) -th step  $x_{m-1}^*(Z_{m-2})$ , necessary to maximize with the given one  $Z_{m-2}$  sum  $W_{m-1,m}^*$  of the following values:
- 1) the remaining (not imbeduous in the production) income at (m-1) -th step

$$w_{m-1} = f_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + g_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) - R_{m-1}(f_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + g_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}));$$

2) prize at the latter/last step/pitch during the optimum control

$$\begin{split} W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}) &= W_{m}^{*}(\varphi_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + \psi_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) + \\ &+ R_{m-1}(f_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + g_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}))). \end{split}$$

Fage 98.

300 = 80151505

FAGE 180

Thus, conditional optimum courtail on (m-1) -th the step/pitch is located as the value  $x_{m-1}$ , at anica it is reached the maximum of value  $W_{m-1,m}^+$ .

$$\begin{aligned} W_{m-1, m}^{*}(Z_{m-2}) &= \max_{0 < \tau_{m-1} < Z_{m-2}} \left\{ W_{m-1, m}^{*}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1}) \right\} = \\ &= \max_{0 < \tau_{m-1} < Z_{m-2}} \left\{ f_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + g_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) - \\ -R_{m-1}(f_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + g_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1})) + \\ +W_{m}^{*}(\gamma_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + \gamma_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) + \\ +R_{m-1}(f_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + g_{m-1}(Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}))) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

3. Conditional optimum control  $x_i^*(Z_{i-i})$  on the i stage will be located from the relationship/ratio

$$W_{i_{t+1}+1, \dots, m}^{*}(Z_{i-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_{i} \le Z_{t-1}} \{f_{t}(x_{i}) + g(Z_{t-1} - x_{i}) - R_{t}(f_{t}(x_{i}) + g_{t}(Z_{i-1} - x_{i})) + W_{i+1, \dots, m}^{*}(\varphi_{t}(x_{i}) + \varphi_{i}(Z_{t-1} - x_{i})) + R_{t}(f_{t}(x_{i}) + g_{t}(Z_{t-1} - x_{i}))\}\}.$$

4. Optimum control  $x_1^*$  at this stap/pitch and maximum value of prize  $W^*$  are found from condition

$$\begin{split} W^* &= W^*_{1, 2, \dots, m} = \max_{0 < x_1 < Z_2} \{ f_1(x_1) + g_1(Z_0 - x_1) - \\ &- R_1 (f_1(x_1) + g_1(Z_0 - x_1)) + \\ &- W^*_{2, \dots, m} (\varphi_1(x_1) + \varphi_1(Z_0 - x_1) + R_1 (f_1(x_1) + \\ &+ g_1(Z_0 - x_1)) \} \}. \end{split}$$

5. Issue of the first during optimum control

300 = 80151505

FAGE 18/

$$Z_1^* = \varphi_1(x_1^*) + \psi_1(Z_0 - x_1^*) + R_1 \left( f_1(x_1^*) + g_1(Z_0 - x_1^*) \right);$$

optimum control at second step/pltch:

$$x_2^* = x_2^*(Z_1^*);$$

issue of second step/pitch during opcisum control:

$$Z_2^{\bullet} = \varphi_2(x_2^{\bullet}) + \psi_2(Z_1^{\bullet} - x_2^{\bullet}) - R_2(f_2(x_2^{\bullet}) + g_2(Z_1^{\bullet} - x_2^{\bullet})).$$

and so forth to latter/last ster/patch.

Page 99.

the solution of the following promises of distributing the resources/lifetimes.

- i. To optimize distribution of resources according to two branches of production under following conditions: income is packed into production not completely, but partially ("function of enclosure"  $R_i(\xi)$   $(l=1,\ldots,m-1)$  are gleset); is maximized total net income for all stages, without taking into account remaining resources.
- e. To optimize distribution or resources according to the tranches of production under formowing conditions: income is packed into production not completely, since its known fraction  $z_l(\xi)$  is

DOC = 80151505 FAGE 187

removed in the form of tax; remaining part is packed into production; it is maximized total quantity of resources (tasic plus income) after m stage. There will not be any of these tasks under some conditions for that decemerates?

§ 12. Other varieties of the task of distributing the rescurces/lifetimes.

In this paragraph we will consider several tasks of the different regions of practice, which uslong, actually, to the same category of "tasks for the distribution of the resources/lifetimes", but in which unusual setting immediately does not suggest about the familiar diagram. Calculating, that the reader already seized the principles of dynamic programming, we will allow ourselves with the solution of these problems of stepping back from standard notation, after preserving by constant/imvaliable only the diagram of the solution.

a. Task about weight also nutration between steps/stages of space vehicle. One must plan multiplevel space vehicle in the limits of the specific launching weight of cosmonaut's catin has preset weight  $g_K$ . It is assumed that the rocket will have m of steps/stages.

Page 100.

Launching weight of rocket is composed of the weights of all steps/stages and cabin:

roc = 80151505

FAGE 194

$$G = \sum_{i=1}^{m} G_i + g_{K}.$$

where  $G_i$  - weight of the i suey/stage.

Each step/stage has some supply of combustible. After fuel depletion used-up stage it is discarred and it enters in the operation following.

Additional velocity  $\Delta v_i$ , which acquires the rocket for the operating time of the ergine of the 1 step/stage, depends both on the weight of step/stage itself  $G_i$  (neighborship) and on the weight of that cargo which it is necessary to carry:

$$\Delta v_i = f(G_i, P_i). \tag{12.1}$$

where

$$P_i = G_{i+1} + G_{i+2} + \dots + G_m + g_K$$
 (12.2)

- weight of the "passive" cango, moved by the i stage of rocket.

It is necessary to find advantageous weight distribution  $Q_0 = G - g_K \text{ between m stages on recket, with which the velocity after}$  the lischarge/break of all stage/stages will be maximum.

rask is similar to one of the varsions of the task of distributing the rescurces/lafetimes, namely - the task of the

reduniancy of the resources (see § 1J, p. b). Actually/really, m of the stages of rocket it is possible to visualize as m of the stages of the process of acceleration, before each stage we must solve: what part of being at our disposal weight, not spent, until now, we is spent to this stage, and what we reserve for the following, however, in comparison with the task of the redundancy of resources, examined into § 10, this task has certain special feature/peculiarity: function f, which is determining "income" from the stage of acceleration, it depends not on anymment - the "imbedded" resources, but from two - "imbedded" and "reserved". However, this does not vary the method of the solution and even it does not complicate it any substantially.

Let us designate  $G_i$  — weight, saparated to the i-th step/stage ("control" in the i stage);  $Q_i = Q_0 + (G_1 + G_2 + ... + G_i)$ — weight, reserved to the remaining steps/stages. Value  $Q_i$  is analogous to the sum of resources  $Z_i$  that remains at our disposal after the i stage in the task about the redundancy or resources.

Page 101.

In the new designations formula (12.1) can be rewritten thus:

$$\Delta v_i = f(G_i, Q_i + g_K). \tag{12.3}$$

Phase space, just as in the task about the redundancy of rescurces, can be assigned in the form or changle AOB (Fig. 12.1). In each stage the trajectory reaches the axis of the ordinates (the "resources", isolated into the ster/stage, completely are expensed/consumed). Then  $S_0$  thes/lests on line AE, point  $S_{\text{NOM}}$  in the beginning of coordinates.

Let us begin, as always, from the latter/last stage. Any weight  $Q_{m-1}$ , which was preserved as a result of the previous stages, should be it goes without saying completely returned on m-th step/stage. Conditional optimum control at the m step/pitch will be

$$G_{m}^{\bullet}(Q_{m-1})=Q_{m-1}.$$

In this case will be acquired the conditional maximum velocity increment, which corresponds to given one  $Q_{m-1}$ :

$$\Delta V_{m}^{\bullet}(Q_{m-1}) = f(Q_{m-1}, g_{K}).$$

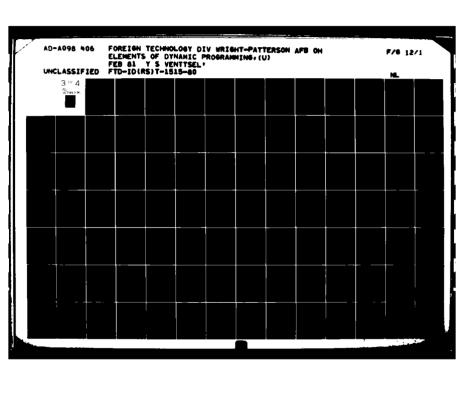
We fix/record weight  $Q_{m-2}$  which remained afterward (m-2) -th of stage. It is obvious,

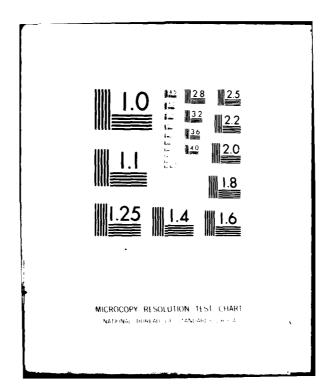
$$Q_{m-1} = Q_{m-2} - G_{m-1}.$$

Conditional optimum control on (m-1) - stage  $G_{m+1}(Q_{m+2})$  will be located as rotating into the maximum the sum of two velocity increaents:  $\Delta v_{n-1}$  achieved/reached in (a-1) -th the stage with control  $G_{n-1}$  and  $\Delta V_n^*$  - maximum increase in the m stage:

$$\begin{array}{l} \Delta V_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(Q_{m-2}) = \\ = \max_{0 < Q_{m-1} < Q_{m-2}} \{ f(G_{m-1}, Q_{m-2} - G_{m-1} \stackrel{1}{\leftarrow} Q_K) + \\ + \Delta V_{m}^{\bullet}(Q_{m-2} - G_{m-1}) \} \end{array}$$

and so on.





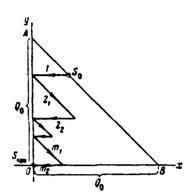


Fig. 12.1.

Page 102.

Conditional optimum control on the i step/pitch is found from the condition

$$\begin{split} \Delta V_{i,\ i+1,\ ...,\ m}^{*}(Q_{i-1}) &= \\ &= \max_{0 < \sigma_{i} < Q_{i-1}} \{ f(G_{i},\ Q_{i-1} - G_{i} + g_{K}) + \\ &+ \Delta V_{i+1,\ ...,\ m}^{*}(Q_{i-1} - G_{i}) \}. \end{split}$$

After the optimization of the first step/pitch (selection of the weight of first stage  $G*_1$ ) the sequence of stages, as always, passes for a second time from the neglining toward the end; as a result is found the set of the optimum weights of the steps/stages:

$$G_{i}^{\bullet}, G_{2}^{\bullet}, \ldots, G_{m}^{\bullet}; \sum_{i=1}^{m} G_{i}^{\bullet} = Q_{0},$$

the imparting to the useful stage (cabin) maximum speed

$$\Delta V^{\bullet} = \Delta V^{\bullet}_{1, 2, \ldots, m}.$$

b. Distribution of weapons of destruction according to defended targets. In those tasks distributions of the resources/lifetimes which were encountered to us, until now, the resources, isolated in any stage, or gave income and due to this were expended (in full or in part), or they were reserved, they did not give income, but were not expended.

dere we will consider the recultar task in which the rescurces are expended not only in that stays where they give "income", but also in those stages where they "income" do not yield, intensity of the expenditure of these resources depending on that, was how much imbedded in this stage of the directly functioning resources.

Discussion deals with the distribution of rescurces/lifetimes with the "autual support". As an example we will consider the task about the distribution of the resources of striking the defended targets.

rask is placed with following manner: is planned/glided the combat interaction by the special weapons of destruction (for example, aircraft, rocket, winged missiles) on some defended targets (for example, ships, the anti-aircraft guns, etc.). Targets are distributed in depth in the wapon of territory on several parallel borders of defense (Fig. 12.2).

Page 103.

defore to leave to this porder, weapons of destruction pass zone the operations weapons of the social where they undergo bombardment from the side of the latter. Meapons of each border can conduct fire/light not only according to the weapons of destruction, which are guided directly for targets or this border, but also on those weapons of destruction which pass through the zone of action, being directed to the more distant targets, arranged/located on the following borders.

0000000000 (1) Цели 3-го рубежа Дома действия огневых средств 3-го рубежса (3) Цели 2-го рубежа Дама действуя огневых предств 2-га рубежса / 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 (4) Цели 1-га рубежа **(5)Зана** действия огневых средств 1-го рубежса

(6)Средства паражения

Fig. 12.2.

Key: (1). Targets of the 3rd border. (2). Zone of action weapons of 3rd border. (3). Targets ci and border. (3a). Zone of action weapons of 2nd border. (4). Targets of 15t border. (5). Zone of action weapons of 1st border. (6). Weapons of destruction.

Fage 104.

The coating of wearons of destruction is planned/glided as follows: they are divided into the consecutive "waves"; the first wave is directed to the target or the 1st border, the second - on the target of the 2nd border, etc. The first wave passes through the zone of action weapons of the 1st bolder, it bears there known losses, after which the remaining weapons of destruction attack the targets of the 1st border, as a result of which some fraction/portion of these targets is surprised, and their seapons go out of order. Thus, after the coating of the first wave the 1st border of defense proves to be partially suppressed. They enters in the operation the second wave: it moves through the zone or action of the partially suppressed weapons of the 1st border, luses the there certain part of its composition, then it enters into the zone of action weapons of the 2nd border, again loses there certain part of its composition; the remaining weapons of destruction attack the targets of the 2rd border, etc.

The task of planning tom coating is posed as follows:

so as to turn into the maximum average/mean number of the affected targets on all borders.

The posed problem by nature reminds of already familiar us the task of distributing the resources/lifetimes (" resources/lifetimes" are here weapons of destruction, we mincome" - affected targets), but it differs from it in terms of two special features/peculiarities.

First, the weapons of destinction, isolated for the interaction on the targets of one or the other border, not only implement their primal problem (strike targets), but also they project/emerge as the "support" to the following waves, racilitating for them the overcoming the preliminary burners of defense.

In the second place, in contrast to all those it is previously examined, this task contains the element of randomness.

Actually/really, an actual number of affected targets and failing weapons of destruction can prove to be the fact, etc. in the dependence on the random factors (for example, detection range, the accuracy of shooting, the random of equipment, etc.).

Page 105.

The tasks of the dynamic programming, which contain the random factors (the so-called "stochastic" tasks) form special class and

raquire the special approach (see § 15, 16). However, in this case we will not use this general/common/cotal approach, but solve task approximately with the help or the simplest method, fraquently used in the similar cases: we will replace all figuring in the task random variables (number of affected targets on each border, number failing weapons of destruction) with their average/mean values (mathematical expectations). This method, anion strongly simplifies task, usually gives comparatively small errors in the case when a number of the combat units (targets, weapons or destruction), which participate in the process, is sufficiently great 1.

FOCTNOTE 1. An example of the task, decided not according to the "average/mean" characteristics, but with the real account to randomness, is given into 9 to. EmuPOOINOTE.

The solution of stated rousem of distributing the weapons of destruction according to the desented targets simpler will consider based on specific example, after assigning the specific form of the figuring in it functional degendences.

Let be planned/glided cuatury n of aircraft on the air defense weapons (the anti-aircraft yeas), arranged/located on a borders (Fig. 12.3).

FAGE 195

DOC = 80 15 1506

In all on m borders there are by N of the instruments

$$N = \sum_{i=1}^{m} N_i. {12.4}$$

where  $N_i$  - number of instruments, arranged/located on the i torder.

At our disposal there are by n of the aircraft from which must be formed with m of the waves:

$$n = \sum_{i=1}^{m} n_i. \tag{12.5}$$

where  $n_i$  (i=1, 2, ..., m) - a number of aircraft, which form part of the i wave and which have the contact mission to influence on the instruments of the i terder.

It is assumed that the waves are formed/shaped and is obtained the combat mission previously, and in the process of coating no longer they are reconstructed. Each wave flies before those following with certain prevention/advance on the time, so that up to the moment/torque of the approach or the following wave manages to already fulfill its combat massion.

Fage 105.

defore emerging at the worder of the location of instruments, each aircraft passes the zone or action of the instruments of this

instruments of this torder walca wave the capability to shoot (i.e. they are found within reach and up to the given moment/torque they are not affected). To attack the Lastruments, arranged/located on this porder, can only those alreadt, which happily passed the zone of the operation of the instrument of this torder and all preceding.

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
ӌҫӌҁҁҁҁҁҁҁҁҁҁҁ <i>(1) 4-й рубеж</i> с, <i>N<sub>α</sub> арудий</i>
(2) Зона действия орудий 4-го рубежса
14)Зана действия орудий 3-го рубсжей ////////////////////////////////////
ΥΥΥΥΥΥΥΥ ( <del>S</del> ) <sup>2-ù</sup> рубежс, М <sub>2</sub> орудий
Зана Лействия орудий 2-го рубежса
փ փ փ փ փ փ փ փ փ (G) 1-մ pyóczc. N, որyðuð
СП зача действия прудий 1-га рубежка
***
<u> </u>
(В) п самолетов

Fig. 12.3.

Key: (1). the 4th border, N. or lastruments. (2). Zone of effect of instruments of 4th border. (3). 32a porder, N3 cf instruments. (4). Zone of action of instruments or and border. (5). 2nd border,  $N_2$  of instruments. (6). 1st torder, No or instruments. (7). Zone of action of instruments of 1st border. (a). p of aircraft.

PAGE 198

DOC = 80151506

Page 107.

Characteristics of the officiency of the combat action of instruments on the aircraft and the aircraft on the instruments following.

1. Kill probability or the allocaft, which flies zone of action of instruments of i border, is expressed by formula

$$V_i = 1 - e^{-a_i \tilde{N}_i}, \qquad (12.6)$$

where  $\tilde{N}_i$  - average number of instruments, which were preserved by those nonafflicted on this parameter,  $z_i$  - coefficient, depending on efficiency of shocting of instruments at aircraft.

2. Average number of instruments of i border, beaten with wave aircraft, directed along targets or this border, is expressed by formula

$$Q_l = N_l \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{\tilde{\gamma}_l}{N_l} p_l} \right]. \tag{12.7}$$

where  $N_i$  - number of instruments on i border,  $\tilde{v}_i$  - average number of aircraft in i wave, which were preserved by those nonafflicted after passage of zones of action of instruments of this border and all previous,  $P_i$  - average/mean will probability of one instrument

of border by its attacking aurorant.

It is necessary to assign case composition of waves, i.e., numbers  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$ , ...  $n_m$  so as to become maximum an average number of affected targets on all boruers:

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{m} w_i.$$

where  $w_i$  - average number of arrested targets of the i border.

In order to use the method of dynamic programming, it is necessary to, first of all, giving the planned/glide process into the steps/pitches (stages). This distribution can be made, generally speaking, by different sethous; is important only in the course of reasonings clear to visualize the determination of "step/pitch accepted" and not to be brought down from it to another.

We will divide process into the sceps/pitches, on the basis of its following (it can be, sufficiently artificial) schematization.

Page 108.

Let us visualize that the zone or action of the instruments of the i border approaches certain number of aircraft  $Z_{t-1}$ , which happily surmounted all i - 1 previous powders of the defense (this number

DOC = 80151506 FIGE 200

 $Z_{i-1}$  so will assume/set by the equal to its average/mean value and allow/assume, thus, not only wholes, but also fractional "quantities cf aircraft"). It is necessary than value - existing at our disposal of resource - to divide into two parts:  $x_i$  - the aircraft, which are guided for the damage/defeat of the i border, and  $y_i = Z_{i-1} - x_i$  - aircraft, "IESEL Veu" for the damage/defeat of the instruments of the subsequent porcers. The first will meet nonweakened fire/light of the instruments of the i torder, the second - with the fire/light, already weakened by previous interaction  $x_i$ cf aircraft.

Jpon this formulation or the problem we learn in it the already familiar signs/criteria of the task about the redundancy of resources.

Let us plan the overall diagram of its sclution by the method of dynamic programming.

1. We fix/record result of (m-1) -th of step/pitch: zone of action of instruments of a normal approached  $Z_{n-1}$  aircraft.

It is obvious, all these arcraft must be directed toward the damage/lefeat of the irstruments of the m border. Conditional optimum control at the m ster/pitch #111 we

$$x_{m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-1}) = Z_{m-1}. \tag{12.8}$$

DOC = 30151506 FICE 20/

Let us determine the appropriate conditional maximum value of a number of affected instruments of a border  $\frac{W^*_{m}(Z_{m-1})}{}$ . Since the m torder yet did not undergo extect, on it were preserved all  $N_m$  of the instruments:

$$\tilde{N}_m = N_m. \tag{12.9}$$

The kill probability of each of the chosen aircraft, according to formula (12.6), is equal to

$$V_m = 1 - e^{-\tau_m N_m}.$$

and an average number of alregalt which will happily cross the zone of the operation of the instauments of this border, it will be

$$\tilde{\gamma}_m(Z_{m-1}) = Z_{m-1} \cdot (1 - V_m) = Z_{m-1} e^{-\gamma_m V_m}.$$
 (12.10)

Fage 109.

According to formula (12.7) these aircraft will strike the average number of instruments of the m border, equal to

$$W_{m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-1}) = N_{m} \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{\tilde{\gamma}_{m}}{N_{m}} \rho_{m}} \right]. \tag{12.11}$$

where  $\tilde{\gamma}_n$ , as shows formula (12.10), lepends or  $Z_{n-1}$ .

Thus, on the m step/pitch are found conditional optimum control (12.8) and conditional saxious prize (12.11).

2. For planning/glidiny (m-1)-th step/pitch we fix/record results (m-2)-th. let the zone of action of instruments (m-1)-th of border approach  $Z_{m-2}$  arc. arc; from them it is necessary to isolate  $x_{m-1}$  on target (m-1)-th norder, and the others to direct toward the m border through the zone of action of instruments of (m-1)-th border.

Conditional optimum control  $x_{m-1}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2})$  will be located from the condition of maximum prize on two latter/last steps/pitches

$$W_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{0 \le x_{m-1} \le Z_{m-2}} \{Q_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + W_{m}^{\bullet}(Z_{m-1})\}. \quad (12.12)$$

where  $Q_{m-1}(x_{m-1})$  - average number of targets, affected on (m-1) -th border by those isolated for this  $x_{m-1}$  by aircraft;  $Z_{m-1}$  - average number of aircraft which will approach the zone of action of the instruments of the m border unring this control (this value it depends both on the control at (m-1) -th step  $x_{m-1}$  and from the number of aircraft  $y_m = Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}$  isolated into the flight/span of the zone of operation of (m-1) -th police).

According to formula (12.7) se have

$$Q_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) = N_{m-1} \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{\tilde{r}_{m-1}}{N_{m-1}} r_{m-1}} \right]. \quad (12.13)$$

where

 $\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_{m+1} = \mathbf{x}_{m+1}(1 - V_{m+1}) = \mathbf{x}_{m+1}e^{-\mathbf{x}_{m+1}N_{m+1}}$  (12.14)

Fage 110.

**.** . .

Let us count an average number of nonafflicted aircraft of the second ("reserved") group, passing through the zone of action of instruments of (m-1) -th or normal in order to be thrown from the m-th. Upon the input into the zone of their operation it was

$$Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}$$

An average number of instruments, affected on (m-1) -th border by aircraft, will be equally so  $Q_{m-1}(x_{m-1})$ . determined according to formula (12.13); consequently, so (m-1) -th the border will be preserved the average number or instruments, equal to

$$\tilde{N}_{m-1} = N_{m-1} - Q_{m-1}(x_{m-1}). \tag{12.15}$$

These instruments by their rare/rayht on the "flying"  $Z_{m-2}-x_{m-1}$  aircraft decrease their number on the average to value

$$Z_{m-1} = (Z_{m-2} - x_{m-1}) \cdot e^{-\epsilon_{m-1} \tilde{Y}_{m-1}}.$$
 (12.16)

This value  $Z_{m-1}$ , which defends on  $Z_{m-2}$  and  $x_{m-1}$ . Bust be substituted into formula (12-12) and, varying control  $x_{m-1}$ , to find maximum conditional prize  $W^*_{m-1,m}(Z_{m-2})$  and corresponding to it optimum conditional control  $x^*_{m-1}(Z_{m-2})$ .

In view of a comparative complexity of the figuring in the task functions hardly has the sense to attempt to seek maximum analytically: it is necessar, to construct the series of the curves of the dependence of value

$$W_{m-1, m}^+ = Q_{m-1}(x_{m-1}) + W_m^*(Z_{m-1}), \quad (12.17)$$

FAGE 204

DOC = 80151506

of that standing in the curry braces in right side (12.12), of  $^{*}n=1$ . Each curve will correspond to that determined  $Z_{n-2}$ , and on it will have to find point with the maximum ordinate. The abscissa of this point will be conditional openmum control at (n-1) -th step  $Z_{n-1}^*(Z_{n-2})$ , and ordinate - corresponding to it conditional saxisum income  $Z_{n-1}^*(Z_{n-2})$  at two latter/last steps/pitches.

will be further oftimized (m-2) -th step etc.

Fage 111.

3. General formulas for conditional maximum prize  $W_{i_1,i_2,\dots,i_m}(Z_{i-1})$  (and respectively conditional optimum control  $x_i^*(Z_{i-1})$ ) take form

$$W_{i, i+1, ..., m}^{*}(Z_{t-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_{t} \le Z_{t-1}} |Q_{i}(x_{t}) + W_{i+1, ..., m}^{*}(Z_{t})|.$$
(12.18)

where

$$Q_{i}(x_{i}) = N_{i} \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{x_{i}}{N_{i}} n_{i}} \right]. \qquad (12.19)$$

$$\tilde{y}_{i} = x_{i} e^{-s_{i} N_{i}}. \qquad (12.20)$$

$$Z_{i} = (Z_{i-1} - x_{i}) e^{-s_{i} \tilde{N}_{i}}. \qquad (12.21)$$

$$\tilde{N}_i = N_i - Q_i(x_i). \tag{12.22}$$

4. According to general/common/total rule the process of

6 FAGE **205** 

DOC = 80151506

optimization continues right up to the first step/pitch, after which is sought optimum control at each stap/pitch:

$$x_1^{\bullet}, x_2^{\bullet}, \ldots, x_m^{\bullet}$$

However, the obtained numbers yet are not (with exception  $x_i^*$ ) of the anknown optimum numbers of maves:

$$n_1^{\bullet}$$
,  $n_2^{\bullet}$ , ...,  $n_m^{\bullet}$ .

since they are formed taking into account the losses of aircraft on all previous borders. In cross, using  $x_i^*$  to find an initial number of aircraft in i wave  $x_i^*$  it is necessary to adjoin to  $x_i^*$  the average/mean losses of this wave  $x_i^*$  on all previous borders.

Let us demonstrate the roccious or the optimization of control, after assigning the corcrete/specializ/actual numerical values of the parameters, which figure in one tank.

Jumber of borders: ==4.

Number of aircraft: n=ou.

Number of instruments on one norders:  $N_1=10$ ;  $N_2=12$ ;  $N_3=15$ ;  $N_4=10$  (in all N=10+12+15+10=47).

Kill probabilities of inscrument by its one attacking aircraft:  $p_1=0.4; \quad p_2=0.5; \quad p_3=0.4; \quad p_4=1.0.$ 

Characteristics of the efficiency of the fire/light of air defense weapons on the aircraft:

$$a_1 = 0.05$$
;  $a_2 = 0.04$ ;  $a_3 = 0.04$ ,  $a_4 = 0.05$ .

Fage 112.

To find optimum numbers or alloraft in the waves:

$$n_1^*$$
,  $n_2^*$ ,  $n_3^*$ ,  $n_4^*$ .

with which a number of affected lastquents on all borders will be saxinal.

The solution we will construct in stages.

1. Conditional optimization of fourth step/pitch. We are assigned by the series/row of the values of a number of aircraft  $Z_3$ , which approached the zone of action of the instruments of the 4th border, for example:

$$Z_3 = 10, 20, 30, 40, 50,$$

and lat us compute for them an average number of struck instruments of the 4th border according ac normal (12.11). The results of calculation let us design in the norm of the graph/diagram of dependence  $\Psi_{+}(Z_3)$  (Fig. 12.+). Entering into this graph with any  $Z_3$ , we will be able to find the appropriate conditional maximum prize  $\Psi_{+}(Z_3)$ ; as far as control to concerned conditional optimum, then it is simply equal

 $x_4^{\bullet}(Z_3) = Z_3.$ 

2. Conditional of the values of the range  $Z_2$  of the aircraft, which surmounted the previous two accounts:

$$Z_1 = 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 40,$$

and for each of them let us count prize at two latter/last steps/pitches: the third - unring any control and the fourth - with the optimum:

$$W_{3,1} = Q_3(x_3) + W_4^*(Z_3).$$
 (12.23)

where

$$Z_1 = (Z_2 - x_1) e^{-x_1 \tilde{V}_1};$$
 (12.24)

$$\tilde{N}_1 = N_1 - Q_1(x_1)$$
;

$$Q_{3}(x_{j}) = N_{3} \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{r_{3}}{N_{3}} r_{3}} \right]; \qquad (12.25)$$

$$v_{3} = x_{3} e^{-r_{2}N_{3}}.$$

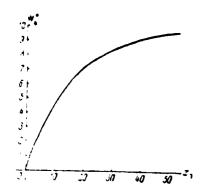


Fig. 12.4.

Page 113.

falue  $Q_3(x_3)$ , entering in (12.23), is counted according to formula (12.25), and  $W*_4(Z_3)$  is located through the graph/curve Pig. 12.4, for which it is necessary to enter into it with value of  $Z_3$ , undertaken from formula (12.24).

After producing calculations according to these formulas for the selected values of  $Z_2$  and the series/row of values  $x_3$ , we construct the series of curves for function  $w^+_{3,4}$  depending on  $x_3$  (Fig. 12.5). For each of these curves we note point with the maximum ordinate. The abscissa of this point - constructed optimum control  $x^*_3(Z_2)$ , which corresponds to that  $Z_2$ , which is appropriate conditional maximum pairs  $w^*_{3,4}(Z_2)$ .

DOC = 80 15 1506 FAGE 409

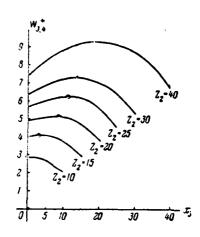
We construct on the graph of Fig. 12.6 (on the different scales) two curves: dependence  $h*_{36}(\mathbb{Z}_2)$  and dependence  $x*_3(\mathbb{Z}_2)$ . The problem of the conditional optimization or the third step/pitch is solved.

3. Conditional optimization or second step/pitch. Procedure is completely analogous and shown in Fig. 12.7 and 12.8. First is constructed the series of our was  $m_{Z,1}^{+}$  ( $x_{Z}$ ), which correspond to the different values of Z, (number or aircraft, which approached the zone of action of the instruments or the 2nd border):

 $Z_1 = 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60,$ 

depending on control x2 at the second step/pitch.

FAGE #210



W<sub>1</sub>, x<sub>3</sub>, y<sub>3</sub>, 8 40 7 7 8 30 5 5 4 20 30 20 30 Z<sub>2</sub>

Fig. 12.5.

Fig. 12.6.

Pages 114-115.

Calculations are conducted according to the formula

$$W_{2,3,4}^+ = Q_2(x_2) + W_{3,1}^*(Z_2).$$
 (12.26)

where

$$Q_2(x_2) = N_2 \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{\tilde{x}_1}{N_2} \mu_2} \right], \qquad (12.27)$$

$$\tilde{y}_2 = x_2 e^{-x_1 N_2}, \qquad (12.28)$$

and value  $W*_{3,4}(Z_2)$  is removed/taken from the graph of Fig. 12.6 with

$$Z_2 = (Z_1 - x_2) e^{-x_1 \tilde{V}_1}, \qquad (12.29)$$

$$\tilde{N}_2 = N_2 - Q_2(x_2). \qquad (12.30)$$

For each of plotted curves (rly. 12.7) again is located the maximum, and are constructed the dependences of its abscissa (conditional optimum control at the second scep/pitch) and its ordinate

DOC = 80151506 FAGE =2//

(corresponding prize) on Z, (Fig. 12.8).

Graphing of Fig. 12.8 solved the task of the conditional optimization of the second step/pitch.

4. Optimization of first step/pitch. Value  $Z_0$ , with which we arrived at the optimization, are present:

 $Z_0 = n = 80$ .

therefore we must construct only one curve dependence of  $W_{\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2},\frac{4}{3}}$  on control  $x_1$  at the first stay/plugue (Fig. 12.9).

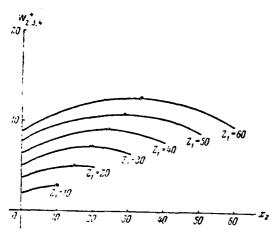
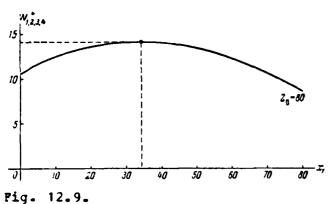


Fig. 12.7.

£13. 12.8.



Page 116.

Calculations for the construction by this curve are conducted according to the formula

$$W_{1,2,3,4}^{+}(x_1) = Q_1(x_1) + W_{2,3,4}^{*}(Z_1).$$
 (12.31)

where

$$Q_{1}(x_{1}) = N_{1} \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{\tilde{x}_{1}}{N_{1}} \rho_{1}} \right].$$
 (12.32)  
$$\tilde{v}_{1} = x_{1} e^{-x_{1} N_{1}},$$
 (12.33)

$$\tilde{\mathbf{v}}_i = \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{e}^{-\mathbf{e}_i N_i}, \tag{12.33}$$

PAGE #213

DCC = 80151506

but value Wale (Z1) is removed/taxed from the graph of Fig. 12.8 with

$$Z_1 = (Z_0 - x_1) e^{-\alpha_1 \tilde{N}_1},$$
 (12.34)

$$\tilde{N}_1 = N_1 - Q_1(x_1),$$
 $Z_0 = n = 80.$ 
(12.35)

In the curve of Fig. 12.9 we note point with the maximum ordinate and thus we find a maximally possible prize (average number of affected instruments to all four borders)

$$W' = W_{1,2,3,4} = 14.1$$

and optimum control on the first step/pitch

$$x_1^* \approx 34$$
.

5. Optimization of entra process. We find optimum control step by stap from the beginning to the end/lead. We isolated into the composition of the first wave (to the damage/defeat of the instruments of the 1st horus,)  $x*_1=34$  alreaft, and the others y\*1=80-34=46 aircraft directed further.

The zone of action of the lastruments of the 2nd border will approach (see formula (12.34,) the number of aircraft, equal to

$$Z_{1}^{\bullet} = 46e^{-a_{1}\tilde{N}_{1}^{\bullet}}, \qquad (12.36)$$

where

$$\tilde{N}_{1}^{*} = N_{1} - Q_{1}(x_{1}^{*}), \qquad (12.37)$$

$$\tilde{N}_{1} = N_{1} - Q_{1}(x_{1}^{*}), \qquad (12.37)$$

$$Q_{1}(x_{1}^{*}) = N_{1} \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{y_{1}^{*}}{N_{1}} n_{1}} \right], \qquad (12.38)$$

$$\tilde{\gamma}_{1}^{*} = x_{1}^{*} e^{-\eta_{1} N_{1}}.$$

FAGE #214

Producing calculations with  $a_1=0.05$ ,  $N_1=10$ , we have

$$Q_1(x_1) = 5.6; Z_1 \approx 37.$$

i.e., on the 1st border it walk be affected or the average of 5,6 instruments, and the zone or action of the instruments of the 2nd border it will approach on the average of 37 aircraft of 46 "that raserved".

Page 117.

with the obtained value CL 2\*1=37 let us enter into the graph of Fig. 12.8 and will find crtimum control on the second step/pitch  $x_{2} = 23$ .

i.e., from 37 preserved aircaart at is necessary to isolate 23 to the damaga/defeat of the instruments or the 2nd border, and "to reserve"  $y_2^* = 37 - 23 = 14.$ 

We further find a rumber or aircraft which will approach the zone of action of the instruments of the 3rd torder:

whera

$$Z_2^* = 14e^{-\sigma_2 \hat{N}_2^*}. (12.39)$$

$$\tilde{N}_2^* = N_2 - Q_2(x_2^*). \tag{12.40}$$

$$\tilde{N}_{2}^{\bullet} = N_{2} - Q_{2}(x_{2}^{\bullet}). \tag{12.40}$$

$$Q_{2}(x_{1}^{\bullet}) = N_{2} \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{\tilde{x}_{2}^{\bullet}}{N_{1}} \rho_{1}} \right]. \tag{12.41}$$

$$\tilde{y}_{0}^{*} = x_{0}^{*} e^{-a_{1}N_{2}}. \tag{12.42}$$

an average number of instruments, beaten on the 2nd border:

$$Q_2(x_2)\approx 5.4.$$

and an average number of arctait, walch surmounted the first two borders:

$$Z_2^{\bullet} = 10.7.$$

With value of  $Z*_2=10.7$  We enter that the graph of Fig. 12.6 and find optimum control on the third step/pitch

$$x_{2}^{*}=0$$

i.e., to the damage/defeat c. the instruments of the 3rd border of aircraft to select completel, not necessary! This at first glance unexpected conclusion will be completely natural, if one considers that the shooting at the instruments of the 4th border under conditions of our task such more efficient than on the instruments of the 3rd border ( $p_3=0.4$ ;  $p_4=1$ ), and therefore has sense, in spite of the counteraction of the 3rd border, to reserve all 10.7 aircraft for the fourth wave.

from these 10.7 aircrare the zone of action of the instruments of the 4th border it will arroacu on the average

$$Z_3^{\bullet} = Z_2^{\bullet} \cdot e^{-a_3 \cdot V} = 5.9.$$

FAGE 216

DOC = 80151506

Page 118.

All of these 5,9 alreadt must be cast to the damage/defeat of the instruments of the 4th normal. From them they will be preserved by those nonafflicted or the average

$$\tilde{v}_4 = Z_3 e^{-a_0 N_4} = 3.6$$
 самолета,

Key: (1). aircraft.

and taey will strike or the 4th ourder on the average

$$Q_1 = N_4 \left[ 1 - e^{-\frac{\tilde{Y}_1^*}{N_1} \rho_4} \right] = 3.1 \text{ opygus.}$$

Kay: (1). instrument.

The process of optimization is complated: is found the optimum control:  $x_1^*=34$ :  $x_2^*=23$ :  $x_3^*=0$ :  $x_4^*=5.9$ .

It remains to pass from these values (quantity of aircraft, separated to this border from a number of those preserving to this border) to values  $n_1^*$ ,  $n_2^*$ ,  $n_3^*$ ,  $n_4^*$ . Lacraced in the waves, formed/shaped in the beginning of coating. We have

$$n_1^* = x_1^* = 34.$$

i.e., in the first wave it is necessary to include/connect 34

aircraft of 80.

In what proportion it is necessary to divide the remaining 46 aircraft between the second and routh waves? According to our calculations after the passage of the 1st border of 46 "reserved" aircraft it will remain 37, or anem 23 must function on the instruments of the 2nd torus. Since, according to condition, we must form/shape waves previously, but not on the torders of borders, then it is obvious, it is necessary to divide 46 the "reserved" aircraft between second and forth waves in relationship/ratic 23:14, i.e., to include/connect in the second wave 27 aircraft, but in the fourth remaining 19.

Thus,

$$n_1^* = 34; \quad n_2^* = 27; \quad n_3^* = 0; \quad n_4^* = 19.$$

During this optimes planning/ylliding will be affected the maximally possible average number of targets, equal to

$$W^* = 14.1.$$

from nottom on 1st border 5,0, on and 5,4, on 3rd not one and on 4th 3,1.

It does not represent the mork to count also its own losses of aircraft with the execution or the compat mission. The part of these losses, namely losses in the "reserved" aircraft, we already computed

in the course of computation, and for them it is necessary to supplement still loss in those alteraft which, favorably after passing the preceded borders, are nearly to the damage/defeat of the instruments of this border. An average quantity of these losses  $\Pi_l$  on the i border is computed from the formula

$$\Pi_i = x_i^* (1 - e^{-\tau_i N_i}).$$

Page 119.

Applying this formula, and also taking into account the previously obtained losses in the reserved aircraft, we will obtain grand average losses:

on the 1st border

$$13.4 + 9.1 = 22.5$$
;

on the 2nd border

$$8.8 + 3.3 = 12.1$$
;

on the 3rd border

4.8;

on the 4th torder

2.3.

Altogether of 80 aircraft with the fulrillment of operation on the suppression of air defense zone in will be lost in average/mean 42; by the price of such their can losses can be achieved/reached maximum "prize" - it is affected on the average of 14 instruments of the

opponent.

It is obvious, such unconstructing of result does make it necessary to be planned about that, it is expedient to generally carry out operation on the suppleasion of the such well defended targets as in our example, when the help of such weapons of destruction as the examined by us discraft? However, reasonings on this theme exceed the scope of the object/subject of dynamic programming, especially necessary initial numerical data, on which we constructed the solution, were selected from the purely systematic considerations and have account in common with the real ones.

Let us pause at the acts question. Stated problem about the distribution of weapons or destruction we solve on the assumption that the distribution of alteract into the waves and cutput of the combat mission to each wave as gloduced previously, and in the course of executing the operation its original plan does not vary.

Page 120.

In the principle the mission can be assigned otherwise: to assume that on the approaches to each border the actually preserved number of aircraft (which in the accuracy cannot be previously predicted) each time optimally is redistributed to two groups: one is

directed to damage/defeat or the targets of this border, and another flies further. In the presence or the mayn speed control computer this optimum redistribution as quate possible. The exact solution of this task can be constructed with the general methods of the solution stochastic problems of the darrate programming (see §§ 15, 16). However, in the first approximation, it is possible to use the following method.

In the beginning of coaling (on overcomings of the 1st torder) is solved the task of dynamic programming as this was shown above, and is located the optimum control on the first step/pitch  $x*_{\ell}$  which is realized. Then is discovered that the 2nd torder it approached actually not  $Z*_{\ell}$  aircraft, but another number  $Z_{\ell}$ . But indeed with the solution of the problem of a name programming we for each  $Z_{\ell}$  found the conditional optimum control  $A*_{\ell}(Z_{\ell})$ ; we will use this dependence and let us use for that actually carrying out  $Z_{\ell}$  this optimum control, etc.

Logically does arise the question: does have sense to study in the course of operation by this "Ledistribution", i.e., is great the prize in an average number of alrected instruments, bought to the price of this complication of coursel? Response/answer to this question can be given, only if we construct the more exact "stochastic model" of compart operations (without the replacement of

random values by their mathematical expectations), similar this is done into §§ 15, 16.

of the previous task (t) we assumed that the target of the operation, carried out by aircraft, call the damage/defeat of targets (instruments), the greater is well be defended affected these instruments, the better. Critation W we have an average number of affected targets.

It is possible to consider another task when n of aircraft surmoint air defense zore in cider beyond its limits to fulfill some other, basic combat mission for example, bombing on the industrial objects). In order to ensure a maximally successful fulfillment of this pasic combat task, and is selected certain quantity of aircraft for the suppression of air defense weapons.

Fage 121.

As the criterion during the evaluation of efficiency in the entire operation in this case is as also to select an not average number of affected instruments, but an average number of aircraft  $Z_m$ , surmounted all m borders or 200 and ready to execution further combat operations:

 $W = Z_m$ 

This task has screething jeneral/common/total with the task about the distributions of resources/liketimes, when is maximized not income, but the total quantity of resources (see § 11t), and just as that, proves to be the "dejensace" cask of dynamic programming.

Actually/really in order to be convinced of this, let us sketch the diagram of the sclution or problem by the method of dynamic programming. The criterion, endow it is necessary to turn into the maximum, exists  $W=Z_m$  — an average number of aircraft, happily surmounted all m borders.

1. We fix/record  $Z_{m-1}$ . Conditional optimum control at m stap/pitch  $x_m^*(Z_{m-1})$  no longer equal to  $Z_{m-1}$  but it is found from the condition

$$W_m^*(Z_{m-1}) = \max_{0 \le x_m \le Z_{m-1}} \{Z_m(Z_{m-1}, x_m)\}.$$

where  $Z_m(Z_{m-1}, x_m)$  - average number of alreaft, which surmounted the materials with the preset number of alreaft  $Z_{m-1}$ , which enter to this border, and control  $x_m$  on this border.

Completely it is clear that  $Z_m$  is nondecreasing function  $Z_{m-1}$ , therefore, and  $W_m^*$  is also nondecreasing function  $Z_{m-1}$ .

2. We fix/record  $Z_{m-2}$ . Conditional optimum control on (m-1)-th step  $x_{m-1}^*(Z_{m-2})$  will be located from the condition

$$W_{m-1, m}^{*}(Z_{m-2}) = \max_{0 < x_{m-1} < Z_{m-2}} \{ W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1})) \},$$

where  $Z_{m-1}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1})$  — average number of alreaft, which surmounted the first m-1 borders during preset  $Z_{m-2}$  and fixed/recorded centrel  $x_{m-1}$  It is clear that function  $Z_{m-1}(Z_{m-2}, x_{m-1})$  is the nendecreasing function of argument  $Z_{m-2}$ , consequently, and  $W_m(Z_{m-1}(Z_{m-2}, x_{31}))$  there is nondecreasing function  $Z_{m-2}$ , and this means, and  $W_{m-1,m}(Z_{m-2})$ — the also nondecreasing function.

DOC = 80 15 1507 FAGE \$27

Page 122.

). By completely analogous method let us ascertain that for any (i-th) step/pitch prize at all remaining steps/pitches to eat, nondecreasing function of number of algorithm  $Z_{l-1}$ , which approached this porder.

dence deducible is the conclusion: the posed problem is the "degenerate" task of dynamic programming, to plan is necessary each step/pitch separately, distributing the flown up to this border aircraft to two parts - "to the suppression of air defense weapons and "to the flight/span further" so as to become maximum an average number of aircraft, which surmounted this border (irrespectively of the others).

§ 13. Distribution of resources/Alretimes with the aftereffect.

Examined in § 12 tesks of distributing the rescurces/lifetimes were characterized by that special feature/peculiarity, that the means, isolated in one "tranch", projected/emerced as the "support" for means, isolated in according to the means, isolated to the means, isolated in according to the means, isolated to the means, isolated to the means, isolated to the means according to the

EAGE 225

incoms. This suffert was manifested to quickly after the enclosure of the corresponding means.

In practice can be met such situations, when activity of the "supporting" branch is manifested not right after enclosure in all means, but after some quantity of stages. In general an increase in the income of "basic" tranch depends on that, how long passed from the moment/torque of the encrosure of agains into the "supporting" branch.

The tasks of this type have, on comparison with those previously examined, certain feature: expedition from the "basic" branch in this stage depends not only on the state of system at the given moment/torque (where how much is imbedded), but also from the prehistory of the controlled process (where, when and how much were invested means). The presence of this "aftereffect" (effect of the past on the future) generally complicates the process of planning.

darlier has already been discussed the fact that the presence of aftereffect it is possible to manage, including in the present state of system those parameters them the past, which essential for the future.

Page 123.

DOC = 30151507 FAGE 226

In this case increases the number of measurements of phase space and, therefore, sharply grows a quantity of versions of the states which must be sorted out in the process of optimization. However, fundamental difficulties this solution does not contain.

Let us consider a specific example or task for the distribution of means with the aftereffect.

Is planned/glided the work of entarprise with the initial supply of means  $Z_0$  forward for period m or years. A quantity of means x, imbedied in the enterprise, is converted in a year (taking into account of income and expendicular of means) into some another quantity of means  $F^{(0)}(x)$ , which can be less, it is equal or more than initial x.

The means, available in the beginning of each year, we can at cur discretion either completel, rack into the production or partially expend/consume on the auxiliary actions, for example to the content of scientific laboratory, which, conducting research of production process, after caltain time after its organization raises the profitableness of production, in consequence of which the function of a change in means  $F^{(0)}(x)$  is substituted by another:

PAGE 977

 $F^{(k)}(x) > F^{(0)}(x).$ 

where k - quantity of years, during which the laboratory already existad.

Function  $F^{(k)}(x)$  with  $aa_k$  k we will consider nondecreasing.

In the content of laboratory, obviously, it is necessary to expend some means. Let us assume that these means - completely determined (they do not depend on our whim) and are equal to α(k-1) on the k year of the existence of laboratory (after it it worked already k-1 years). In this case α(0) indicates the original expenditures, required for the creation of laboratory and its content into course of the first year.

Let us agree to consider that if during some year of means to the laboratory they are not released, then it is preserved, achieved profitableness level of production is retained, but with the new enclosure of means laborator, runctions and raises the profitableness of production in the manner that it interruption in the financing they was not.

Page 124.

FAGE 9 28

"Control" of the distribution of means on each stap/pitch (before beginning each rew riscal year, does consist of the solution of the question: tempering money to the laboratory or not to release? With this simplified formulation or cask at each step/pitch is a selection only between two directions:

 $U^{(0)}$  - not to release means,

U'1, - to release means.

It is necessary to find this control during m years, with which the total quantity of means, not imbedded in the laboratory (the net income plus the remaining part of the pasic means), toward the end of the period will be maximal.

He will solve stated problem by the method of dynamic programming. It is first or all necessary to solve the question: by what parameters we will characterize the state of system afterward (i=1) -th of step/pitch (before beginning the i fiscal year)?

Is obvious, by one value  $Z_{i-1} = b_i$  a quantity of means, which are at our disposal afterward (1-1) -th or step/pitch, it is impossible to be bridged, since the income, which we will obtain at the i step/pitch, depends not only on that quantity of means we had

available in the beginning of your and what central was used, but also from that, how many years, until now, worked the laboratory (with our assumptions nevertheless - worked it continuously or with the interruptions).

It is necessary to characterize the state of system after step/pitch to two parameters:

laboratory before beginning one a stap/pitch.

The state of system  $S_{i+1}$  ancerward (i-1) -th step let us register in the form of vector with two components:

$$S_{i-1} = (Z_{i-1}, k_{i-1}),$$

As the phase space let us consider on plane ZOk (Fig. 13.1) the series/row of straight/direct

$$0 + 0'$$
;  $1 + 1'$ ;  $2 + 2'$ ; ...;  $m + m'$ .

parallel to axis abscissas; ordinates of these straight lines are equal to the integers: 0, 1, 2,:. along the axis of abscissas are plotted/deposited the distributed means 2, along the axis of ordinates - number of years or the existence of laboratory k.

Paga 125.

Initial state of system - completely distermination point S<sub>0</sub> on axis 0Z with abscissa Z<sub>0</sub> (initial quantity of means). If at this step means to the laboratory are not released, point on the phase plane moves on the horizontal; in means to the laboratory are released, point is moved with this horizontal like to the following in order.

degion  $\tilde{S}_{\text{kom}}$  of the final states of system is entire the phase space (set, straight lines 0-0°, 1-1°, etc.). Frize  $W=Z_m$  is nothing else but the abscissa of lacter/last point in the trajectory  $S_{\text{kom}}$ . The task of optimum planning/grading as reduced to deduce the point, which represents the state of system, into final state  $S_{\text{kom}}$  with the greatest abscissa (ordinate does not have a value).

Let us plan the diagram of the construction of optimum centrol by the method of dynamic programming. Let us represent gain  $W=Z_m$  into form of sum m of the components/terms/addends:

$$W=w_1+w_2+\ldots+w_{m-1}+w_m.$$

from which all, except the latter, are equal to zero. We will construct the solution by the standard diagram.

FAGE 23

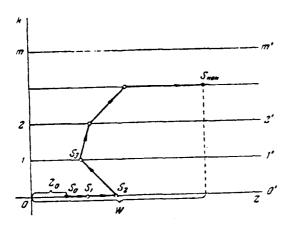


Fig. 13.1.

Page 126.

1. We fix/record result (a-1) -cn step/pitch, i.e., two numbers: quantity of means  $Z_{m-1}$  and number of years  $k_{m-1}$  during which already worked laboratory. In orvious,  $0 \le k_{m-1} \le m-1$ . Let us consider and let us compare income at the a step/pitch which we will obtain during control  $U^{(0)}$  (if we no not reliase money to the laboratory) and during control  $U^{(0)}$  (if we remain). In first the case in the production will be imbedded all means  $Z_{m-1}$ , and we will obtain the income

$$w_m(Z_{m-1}, h_{m-1}, U^{(0)}) = F^{(k_{m-1})}(Z_{m-1}).$$
 (13.1)

In the second case in the production will be imbedded act all means, but only those which will remain after financing of laboratory, and we will obtain the income

$$w_m(Z_{m-1}, k_{m-1}, U^{(1)}) = F^{(k_{m-1})}(Z_{m-1} - \alpha(k_{m-1})).$$
 (13.2)

Since function  $F^{(k_{m-1})}$  not used easing, then it is obvious, of two incomes (13.1) and (13.2) the rest is always more. Thus, optimum control at the latter/last  $\sec_F/_F$  it on exists  $U^{(0)}$  - not to release seems to the laboratory, and thus control does not depend on issue (m-1) -th of the step/fitch

$$U_m^* = U^{(0)}$$

but the corresponding maximum prize is equal to

$$W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}, k_{m-1}) = F^{(k_{m-1})}(Z_{m-1}). \tag{13.3}$$

2. We fix/record issue (4-2) -th step/pitch, i.e., vector  $S_{m-2} = (Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}).$ 

During central  $U^{(0)}$  the point in the phase space will pass on the horizontal into point  $S_{m+1}$  when coordinates

$$Z_{m-1} = F^{(k_{m-1})}(Z_{m-2}); \quad k_{m-1} = k_{m-2}.$$

Prize for the latter/last two steps/pitches (during the optimum control on the latter) will be

$$W_{m-1, m}(Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}, U^{(0)}) = W_{m}(Z_{m-1}, k_{m-1}) = W_{m}(F^{(k_{m-2})}(Z_{m-2}), k_{m-2}).$$
(13.4)

cr, using formula (13.3),

$$W_{m-1, m}^{-1}(Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}, U^{(0)}) = F^{(k_{m-1})}(F^{(k_{m-2})}(Z_{m-2})).$$
 (13.5)

Page 127.

Juring centrel  $D^{(1)}$  the point in the phase space will move with straight line  $k_{m-2}-k_{m-2}'$  to the icolowing in order straight line and will hit point  $S_{m-1}$  with the occurrates

$$Z_{m-1} = F^{(k_{m-2})} (Z_{m-2} - \alpha (k_{m-2}));$$

$$k_{m-1} = k_{m-2} + 1.$$
(13.6)

In this case  $W_{m-1,m}^+$  it which is described by the formula

$$W_{m-1, m}^{+}(Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}, U^{(1)}) = W_{m}^{*}(Z_{m-1}, k_{m-1}) = W_{m}^{*}(F^{(k_{m-2})}(Z_{m-2} - a(k_{m-2})), k_{m-2} + 1), (13.7)$$

cr, taking into account (13.3),

$$W_{m-1, m}^{+}(Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}, U^{(1)}) = F^{(k_{m-2}+1)}(F^{(k_{m-2})}(Z_{m-2}-a(k_{m-2}))). \quad (13.8)$$

)ptimum control  $(U^{(0)}$  or  $U^{(1)})$  wall we located by comparison of two expressions (13.5) and (13.5, and with the selection of maximum of them

$$W_{m-1, m}^*(Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}) = \max \left\{ W_{m-1, m}^*(Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}, U^{(0)}), \\ W_{m-1, m}^*(Z_{m-2}, k_{m-2}, U^{(1)}) \right\}.$$

3. For any (i-th) step/\_ltca optimum centrel ( $U^{(i)}$  or  $U^{(i)}$ ) will be located with comparison of two expressions

$$W_{i, i+1, ..., m}^+(Z_{i-1}, k_{i-1}, U^{(0)})$$

and

$$W_{i,l+1,...,m}^+(Z_{i-1}, k_{l-1}, U^{(1)})$$

and with selection of maximum or them

EAGE 234

$$W_{i,(i+1,\ldots,m)}^{*}(Z_{i-1}, k_{i-1}) = \max \begin{cases} W_{i,(i+1,\ldots,m)}^{*}(Z_{i-1}, k_{i-1}, U^{m}), \\ W_{i,(i+1,\ldots,m)}^{*}(Z_{i-1}, k_{i-1}, U^{m}) \end{cases}, (13.9)$$

where

$$W_{i,i+1,...,m}^{i}(Z_{i-1}, k_{i-1}, U^{(0)}) = W_{i+1,...,m}^{i}(F^{(k_{i-1})}(Z_{i-1}), k_{i-1}), \quad (13.10)$$

$$W_{i,i+1,...,m}^{i}(Z_{i-1}, k_{i-1}, U^{(1)}) = W_{i+1,...,m}^{i}(F^{(k_{i-1})}(Z_{i-1} - x(k_{i-1})), k_{i-1} + 1). \quad (13.11)$$

$$127$$

Page 128.

4. Optimization of first stay/pitch is produced at fixed value of  $Z_{\sigma}$  and  $k_{\sigma}{=}0$ :

$$W^{\bullet} = W_{1, 2, ..., m}^{\bullet} = \max \left\{ \frac{W_{1, 2, ..., m}^{+}(Z_{0}, 0, U^{(0)})}{W_{1, 2, ..., m}^{+}(Z_{0}, 0, U^{(0)})} \right\}. (13.12)$$

where

$$W_{1,2,...,m}^{+}(Z_{0}, 0, U^{(0)}) = W_{2,...,m}^{*}(F^{(0)}(Z_{0}), 0), \qquad (13.13)$$

$$W_{1,2,...,m}^{+}(Z_{0}, 0, U^{(1)}) = W_{2,...,m}^{*}(F^{(0)}(Z_{0} - z_{1}(0)), 1). \qquad (13.14)$$

Optimum control  $U_1^*$  at the liest step/pitch will  $U^{(0)}$  (drep means), if expression (13.13) is more than (13.14). If on the contrary, then optimum control will  $U^{(1)}$  (release means 1).

FCCTNJTE 1. If expressions are equal, then both controls are equal.

30C = 80151507

ENDPOJINOTE.

5. Further is located result of first step/pitch during optimum control:  $(Z_1^*, k_1^*)$ : then optimum control at second step/pitch  $U_2^*$  and so on, up to latter/last step/pitch.

Let us demonstrate the scrutton of problem based on numerical example.

Let us assume m=4 and Let us assign function  $F^{(k)}(x)$  and a(k) with  $1 \le k \le 3$ :

$$F^{(0)}(x) = 1.5x;$$
  $a(0) = 1;$   
 $F^{(1)}(x) = 1.6x;$   $a(1) = 0.5;$   
 $F^{(2)}(x) = 2x;$   $a(2) = 0.4;$   
 $F^{(3)}(x) = 3x;$   $a(3) = 0.3.$ 

1. At latter/last step/ritto, as it is already explained,

$$U_{in}^{\bullet} = U_{i}^{\bullet} = U^{(0)}$$

i.e. means to laboratory to release not necessary. Euritg this optimum centrel the prize at the fourth step/pitch for different k will be equal to

$$W_1^*(Z_3, 0) = 1.5Z_3;$$
  
 $W_1^*(Z_3, 1) = 1.6Z_3;$   
 $W_1^*(Z_3, 2) = 2Z_3;$   
 $W_1^*(Z_3, 3) = 3Z_3.$ 

Page 129.

## 2. We optimize third step/pltch. We have

$$W_{3,4}^+(Z_2, 0, U^{(0)}) = W_4^*(1.5Z_2, 0) = 2.25Z_2;$$
  
 $W_{3,4}^+(Z_2, 0, U^{(1)}) = W_4^*(1.5(Z_2 - 1), 1) = 1.6(1.5Z_2 - 1.5) = 2.4Z_2 - 2.4.$ 

Of these two expressions who winst large of the second with

 $Z_2 < 16$ ; when  $Z_2 > 16$  - vice varsa. Therefore

$$W_{3,4}^{\bullet}(Z_2, 0) = \begin{cases} 2.25Z_2 & \text{(i)} \text{ npii} & Z_2 < 16, \\ 2.4Z_2 - 2.4 \text{ @npii} & Z_2 \ge 16 \end{cases}$$
(13.15)

Key: (1). with.

and raspectively

$$U_3^*(Z_2, 0) = \begin{cases} U^{(n)} e^{inp_H} & Z_2 < 16, \\ U^{(1)} \cup np_H & Z_2 \ge 16. \end{cases}$$
(13.16)

Kay: (1). with.

Purthar we have

$$W_{1,4}^+(Z_2, 1, U^{(1)}) = W_4^*(1.6Z_2, 1) = 1.6 \cdot 1.6Z_2 = 2.56Z_2;$$
  
 $W_{3,4}^+(Z_2, 1, U^{(1)}) = W_4^*(1.6(Z_2 - 0.5); 2) = 2(1.6Z_2 - 0.8) = 3.2Z_2 - 1.6.$ 

Of these two expressions can riest will be more than the second with  $Z_2>2.5$ . Therefore

$$W_{3,4}^*(Z_2, 1) = \begin{cases} 2.56Z_2 & \text{(i) npu} \quad Z_2 \leq 2.5, \\ 3.2Z_2 - 1.6 & \text{onpu} \quad Z_2 \geq 2.5 \end{cases}$$
(13.17)

Key: (1). with.

and respectively

20C = 80151507

FACE 237

$$U_3^*(Z_2, 1) = \begin{cases} U^{(0)} & \text{dispit} \quad Z_2 = 2.5, \\ U^{(1)} & \text{dispit} \quad Z_2 \ge 2.5. \end{cases}$$
(13.18)

Key: (1) . with.

Purther.

$$W_{1,1}(Z_2, 2, U^{(0)}) = W_1^*(2Z_2, 2) = 4Z_2,$$
  
 $W_{3,1}(Z_2, 2, U^{(1)}) = W_1^*(2(Z_2 + 0.4), 3) = 6Z_2 + 2.4.$ 

)f these two expressions can ries: is more with  $Z_2>1.2$ , the second - with  $Z_2>1.2$ ; consequently,

$$W_{3,1}^{*}(Z_{2}, 2) = \begin{cases} 4Z_{2} & \text{(i) при} \quad Z_{2} < 1.2, \\ 6Z_{2} - 2. \text{(j) при} \quad Z_{2} > 1.2 \end{cases}$$
 (13.19)

Key: (1). with.

and raspectively

$$U_3^*(Z_2, 2) = \begin{cases} U^{(0)} \ \mathcal{W}_{\text{при}} & Z_2 < 1.2, \\ U^{(1)} \ \mathcal{W}_{\text{при}} & Z_2 \ge 1.2. \end{cases}$$
(13.20)

Key: (1). with.

Fage 130.

To assume/set  $k_2=3$  no longer necessary, since for two first steps/pitches system carnot arrive to straight/direct 3-3'.

3. We optimize second step/plrcn. we have

$$W_{2,3,4}^*(Z_1, 0, U^{(0)}) = W_{3,4}^*(1.5Z_1, 0).$$

DOC = 80 15 1507 FAGE 238

or, using formula (13.5),

$$W_{2,3,4}(Z_1, 0, U^{(0)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 3.375Z_1 & \text{v) npu} & 1.5Z_1 \le 16, \\ & \text{r. e. 0 npu} & Z_1 \le 10 \frac{2}{3} \approx 10.67, \\ & 3.6Z_1 - 2.4 \text{ (onpu} & Z_1 \ge 10 \frac{2}{3} \approx 10.67. \end{bmatrix}$$
(13.21)

Key: (1). with.

It is analogous

$$W_{2,3,4}(Z_1, 0, U^{(1)}) = W_{3,4}(1.5(Z_1 - 1), 1).$$

or, using formula (13.7),

Key: (1). with.

In order to solve a quasticn, which of expressions (13.21) or (13.22) is more, let us construct the graphs of the corresponding functions (Fig. 13.2).

Each of the curves will be broken line, comprised of two straight lines. The maximum of these two functions is shown in Fig. 13.2 by heavy line. Letters  $U^m$  and  $L^m$  marked the curves, corresponding to the corresponding controls. Ercken line, which represents the maximum of two Lunctions (13.11) and (13.12), current consists of two segments; class juint has an abscissa, equal to 4.4%.

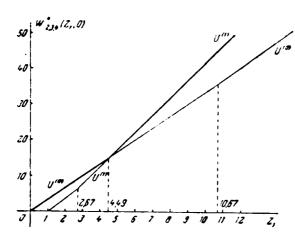


Fig. 13.2.

Fig. 13.3.

Fage 132.

The equation of this curve will be

$$W_{2, 3, 4}^{\bullet}(Z_1, 0) = \begin{cases} 3.375Z_1 & \text{($^{1}$ npir} & Z_1 < 1.49, \\ 4.8Z_1 + 6.4 & \text{Oppir} & Z_1 > 4.49 \end{cases}$$
(13.23)

Key: (1). with.

and, therefore,

$$U_2(Z_1, 0) = \begin{cases} U^{(n)} \alpha | \text{upn} & Z_1 = 4.49; \\ U^{(1)} \text{ Qupn} & Z_1 = 1.49 \end{cases}$$
 (13.24)

Kay: (1). with.

We further find

$$W_{3,3,4}^*(Z_i, 1, U^{(0)}) = W_{3,4}^*(1.6Z_i, 1),$$

or, using formula (13.7),

DOC = 80 15 1507

FAGE 240

Key: (1). with.

Further,  $W_{2,3,4}^{\bullet}(Z_1, 1, U^{(1)}) = W_{3,4}^{\bullet}(1.6(Z_1 - 0.5), 2)$ , or, using formula (13.9),

$$W_{2,3,1}(Z_1, 1, U^{(1)}) = \begin{cases} 6.1Z_1 - 3.2 & \text{npu} & 1.6Z_1 - 0.8 < 1.2, \\ 7. e. & \text{npu} & Z_1 \le 1.25. \end{cases}$$

$$= \begin{cases} 7. e. & \text{npu} & Z_1 \le 1.25. \end{cases} (13.26)$$

$$2.6Z_1 - 7.2 & \text{npu} & Z_1 \ge 1.25.$$

Key: (1). with.

Expressions (13.25) and (13.26) are represented graphically in Fig. 13.3. The maximum of two functions (13.25) and (13.26) is shown in Fig. 13.3 of fatty/greasy proken line of lines whose equation

$$W_{2,3,4}^{\bullet}(Z_1, 1) = \begin{cases} 4.10Z_1 & \text{O'apii} \quad Z_1 = 1.31, \\ 9.6Z_1 + 7.2 \text{O'apii} \quad Z_1 > 1.31; \end{cases} (13.27)$$

Kay: (1). with.

hence

$$U_{2}^{*}(Z_{1}, 1) = \begin{cases} U^{(0)} (0) \text{ npu} & Z_{1} \in \{1.31; \\ U^{(1)} (0) \text{npu} & Z_{1} \geqslant 1.31. \end{cases}$$
(13.28)

Key: (1). with.

To assume/set  $k_1=2$  no longer necessary, since for one first step/pitch system cannot arrive to straight/direct 2-2\*.

DOC = 80151507 FAGE 24/

4. We optimize first stap/patch.

Page 133 We have

5

$$W_{1,2,3,4}^{\perp}(Z_0, 0, U^{(0)}) = W_{2,3,4}^{\dagger}(1.5Z_0, 0).$$

for, using fermula (13.13),

$$W_{1,2,3,4}^{+}(Z_0, 0, U^{(0)}) = \begin{cases} 5.06Z_0 & \text{(Mirph } 1.5Z_0 \leqslant 4.49, \\ \text{(2)T. e. Onph } Z_0 \leqslant 2.93, \\ 7.27Z_0 - 6.4 \text{ Onph } Z_0 \geqslant 2.93. \end{cases} (13.29)$$

Kay: (1). with.

It is analogous

$$W_{1,2,3,1}^{+}(Z_0, 0, U^{(1)}) = W_{2,3,1}^{*}(1.5(Z_0-1), 1),$$

or, ascordingly, to formula (13.1/),

$$W_{1,2,3,4}^{+}(Z_0, 0, U^{(1)}) = \begin{cases} 6.14Z_0 - 6.14 \text{ (Nipu } 1.5Z_0 - 1.5 \leqslant 1.31, \\ 2 \text{ T. e. 0 npu } Z_0 \leqslant 1.87, \\ 14.4Z_0 - 2.16 \text{ (Onpu } Z_0 \geqslant 1.87. \end{cases}$$
(13.30)

Key: (1). with.

Expressions (13.29) and (13.30) are represented graphically in Fig. 13.4. Patty/greasy of lines as soon the maximum of these two functions; the equation of this lake

$$W^{*}(Z_{0}) = W_{1,2,3,4}^{*}(Z_{0}) = \begin{cases} 5.06Z_{0} & \text{(1) npu} \quad Z_{0} < 2.31, \\ 14.4Z_{0} - 21.6 \text{ (Unpu} \quad Z_{0} \geqslant 2.31. \end{cases}$$
(13.31)

Key: (1). with.

FACE 247

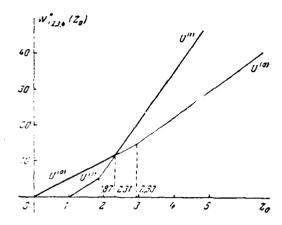


Fig. 13.4.

Page 134.

dence optimum control at the rirst step/pitch will be

$$U_{1}^{\bullet}(Z_{0}) = \begin{cases} U^{(0)} \bigoplus \text{при} & Z_{0} \leq 2.31, \\ U^{(1)} \bigoplus \text{при} & Z_{0} \geq 2.31. \end{cases}$$
 (13.32)

Key: (1). with.

Thus, the conditional orthanzation of each step/pitch is carried out.

5. let us find new openmum control in all four years:

$$U' = (U_1, U_2, U_3, U_3).$$

Let us consider the cases:

PAGE 243

- a)  $Z_0 < 2.31$ ;
- a)  $Z_0 > 2.31$ .

In the case of a) cftimum control at the first stap/pitch will be  $U_1^*=U^{(0)}$  on the first year or means to the laboratory to release not necessary. To end of the first jear as will have number of the means

$$Z_1^{\bullet} = 1.5Z_0 < 3.47$$
;

in this case  $k_1 = 0$ , r. e.  $S_1 = (1.5Z_0, 0)$ .

In order to find crtimum control on second step/pitch  $U_2^{\bullet}$ , let us turn to the graph of Fig. 13.2. Since  $Z_1^{\bullet} < 3.47 < 4.49$ , the optimum control again is  $U^{(0)}$ :

$$U_2^{\bullet} = U^{(0)}$$
.

i.e. on the second year of weaks to the laboratory to release not necessary.

de find the result of the second stap/pitch during the optimum control:

$$Z_1^* = 1.5Z_1^* = 2.25Z_0 < 5.20; \quad k_2^* = 0;$$
  
 $S_2^* = (2.25Z_0, 0).$ 

FAGE 244

From formula (13.6) follows that also at the third step/pitch the optimum control exists  $U^{(n)}$  (not to release means), since

$$Z_2^* < 5.20 < 16$$
.

Control at the latter/lest scep/pitch is standard: to release means to the laboratory is not necessary.

Page 135.

In this case the maximum prime (see formula (13.21)) will be equal to  $W^* = 5.06 Z_0.$ 

Thus, we ascertained that with an initial quantity of means  $z_0 < 2.31$  optimally centrel sx.sis

$$U^{\bullet} = (U^{(0)}, U^{(0)}, U^{(0)}, U^{(0)})$$

i.e. laboratory generally started must not be.

Analogously we are ccavances, tast with  $2_0>2.31$  the optimum control will be

$$U^{\bullet} = (U^{(1)}, U^{(1)}, U^{(1)}, U^{(0)})$$

i.e. laboratory one should to bring lamediately, and to last year preserve. In this case maximum income will be equal to

$$W^{\bullet} = 14.4Z_0 - 21.6.$$

Pig. 13.5 shows two optimum diajactories in the phase space for two concrete/specific/ectual values of  $Z_0$ :  $Z_0 = 2.2 < 2.31 \text{ m } Z_0 = 2.4 > 2.31.$  The first trajectory corresponds to the case when means to the laboratory are not released; the second – to case when laboratory is financed in any stage, except the lactor itself.

FAGE 245

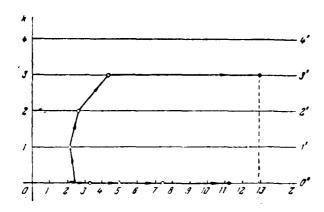


Fig. 13.5.

Page 136.

Let us note that in our example the optimum control, depending on the initial supply of means  $a_0$ , is constructed according to the type "all or nothing" y elemen when a sufficient supply of means it is necessary always (except last lear) to hold laboratory, or, if the supply of means is insufficient, to in no way start it. Here not under such initial conditions there can be advantageous at first to accumulate means, and to them put them into the laboratory.

This is connected with the fact that we considered too small a number of steps/pitches (m=4,. It is possible to propose to reader this exercise: to supplement our initial data, i.e., to assign function  $F^{(4)}(x)$ ,  $F^{(5)}(x)$ , ... and expenditures/consumptions a (4), a (5),

DOC = 80 15 1507

PAGE 246

..., and to attempt to obtain such solution during which optimum control will be "mixed": at the limital steps/pitches the means to the laboratory are not released, and then this becomes advantageous.

§ 14. Tasks of dynamic programming with the nonadditive criterion.

All tasks of the dynamic pic, iamming which we examined, until now, they belonged to the class of the "additive" tasks, i.e., such, in which it is maximized (it is minimized) the criterion of the form

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i. \tag{14.1}$$

where w, - the "prize", acquared in the 1 stage.

Jenerally the method or ayuamic programming can be used also to the "ionadditive" tasks, in walch the criterion is not represented in the form (14.1). Some of them are reduced to by the additive simple conversion of criterion.

Here we will consider the slaplest form of the tasks, which are led to the the additive, namely task with the multiplicative criterion.

"Multiplicative" we will call criterion ("frize") W, if it can be represented in the fcra of the product of the "prizes", reached in

the single stages:

$$W = w_1 w_2 \dots w_m = \prod_{i=1}^m w_i. \tag{14.2}$$

Fage 137.

It is obvious, any multiplicative criterion W of form (14.2) can be artificially converted to the auditive, if we take the logarithm expression W:

$$\lg W = \sum_{l=1}^{m} \lg w_l \tag{14.3}$$

and to designate

$$V = |g|W; \quad v_i = |g|w_i. \tag{14.4}$$

We will obtain the new criterion

$$V = \sum_{i=1}^{n} v_{i}. \tag{14.5}$$

possessing the property of additivity and turning into the maximum (miniaum) simultaneously with #.

Let us consider two examples of tasks with the multiplicative criterion.

a. Distribution n of projectiles according to a targets which must be struck together. Lat there be at our disposal by n of the projectiles by which we wish to serie a of the targets:

$$\coprod_1, \coprod_2, \ldots, \coprod_m (m < n),$$

the combat mission lies in the ract that to strike all targets

FAGE 248

without the exception/elimination. It is necessary so to distribute n of projectiles on m targets so that the protability of the combined damage/defeat of all targets we would reach maximum.

We will consider the distribution of projetiles as m- the stage operation, in each stage of which occurs the extraction of certain number of projectiles to the spectric target. Let us designate  $k_i$  a number of projectiles, ischaled into the 1-th target (i=1, 2, ..., m). Control u will consist of the selection of the numbers  $k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_m$ :

$$U = (k_1, k_2, \dots, k_m), \tag{14.6}$$

and it is necessary to select it uptimally.

Let us assume that in the process of the hombardment of each target are expended/corsumed all chosen into it projectiles and the redistribution of means is not produced. Furthermore, let us assume, that the discrete targets are supprised by the chosen or them projectiles independently or each other.

Page 138.

Then will probability all a or tangers is equal to the product of the kill probabilities of the uncrete targets:

$$W = \prod_{i=1}^{n} P_i(k_i), \qquad (14.7)$$

where  $P_i(k_i)$  - kill protectively of the i target by isolated on carried

EAGE 249

by projectiles.

For the solution of posed problem it is required to assign the function

$$P_1(k), P_2(k), \dots, P_m(k),$$
 (14.8)

characterizing the vulnerability of targets and expressing kill protability by each of them uspecially on number k of chosen into it projectiles.

If all these functions are mentical:

$$P_1(k) = P_2(k) = \ldots = P_m(k) = P(k).$$

i.e. the vulnerability or all targets some and the same, then task becomes trivial and is reduced to distribute projectiles on the targets about the possibility eventy. But if targets are dissimilar by the vulnerability, obviously, the quantity of projectiles, separated on the tasis of the less vulnerable targets, sust be relatively more.

Before slinging the solution by one method of dynamic programming, let us note some of its properties.

Each of the functions  $P_i(k)$ , becomes zero with k=0, i.e.,

$$P_{i}(0) = 0$$
 data  $i = 1, 2, ..., m$ .

FAGE 250

therafore, if we do not fire, at least one of the targets, criterion W will become zero. Hence rollows the condition

$$k_l \geqslant 1$$
  $(i = 1, 2, ..., m).$ 

i.e. on each target it is necessary to isolate at least one projectile. Furthermore, selecting projectiles on the basis of the itarget, we must remember about the fact that to those remaining m-itargets it is necessary without full to reserve at least on one projectile; therefore each of the values A is limited not only from below, but also on top:

$$1 \le k_t \le n - m + 1. \tag{14.9}$$

Fage 139.

In order to use the mermon of dynamic programming, let us pass from aultiplicative criterion (14.7) to the additive, after taking the logarithm it with any rabis/rase (for example, natural e):

$$\ln W = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \ln P_i(k_i). \tag{14.10}$$

In order not to deal concerning nagative numbers, let us designate

$$|\ln W| = V. \ |\ln P_i(k_i)| = v_i(k_i)$$
 (14.11).

and we will obtain the raw - additive - criterion

$$V = \sum_{i=1}^{m} v_i(k_i). \tag{14.12}$$

Since we changed the si,n or critarion, then value V it is necessary to no longer to maximize, but to minimize.

Thus, tasks it is reduced to the following: to find control  $U^*$ . which rotates into the finitus value (14.12).

The obtained task calls to mind that examined into § 10 task of distributing the rescurces/litetimes with the redundancy.

Actually/really, available n or projectiles can be considered as the initial means which into each stage of operation are divided into two parts: separated and reserved, molecular the separating means are expended/consumed to the end/lead. The special feature/peculiarity of this task in the fact that, in the first place, number of the means, separated in each stage, can have only integer values, limited by condition (14.); furthermore, the "income" of V it is not maximized, but it is minimized.

In the tasks of distributing the resources/lifetimes we, for the uniformity, each time as the phase space examined triangle AOE on plane xOy. Here it would be possible to do so, but we will prefer another, more demonstrative method of the image of the process during which directly evidently not that control, but also the obtained "prize".

FAGE 157

Let us consider as phase space the sat of the straight/direct, parallel to axis abscissas:  $0-0^{\circ}$ ,  $1-1^{\circ}$ ,..., n-n' with the integral ordinates (Fig. 14.1). Exint S, which represents the state of system, will be in the process of the consumption of projectiles moved with one of these straight lines to another. If into this target is isolated only one projectile, then point S will be moved to the adjacent straight line: if two - are jumped through the straight line, etc.

Page 140.

Thus, along the axis of crumates will be plotted/deposited the spent to this stage number of projectimes N [n, Along the axis of abscissas we will plot/deposit the accumulated for several stages "prize"  $\sum v_l$ .

Obviously, the initial state of system  $S_0$  completely to determination coincides since the origin of the coordinates; region  $\tilde{S}_{\text{non}}$  of the final states of  $s_i$  stem is the straight line n-n° (in Fig. 14.1 n=9, m=5). It is necessary to find such control 0 (this trajectory in the phase space), during which abscissa  $V = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} v_i$  of end point  $S_{\text{con}}$  will be smallest.

Joive to the end/lead startum problem of dynamic programming, being assigned by the specific values of n and m and by the specific

EAGE 153

form of the function P(k).

met us place a number of projectives n=10, a number of targets

Functions  $P_{\alpha}(b)$  let us assign as follows:

$$P_{1}(k) = 1 + 0.2^{k},$$

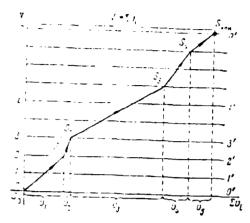
$$P_{2}(k) = 1 + 2 \cdot 0.6^{k} + 0.2^{k};$$

$$P_{3}(k) = 1 + 0.1^{k},$$

$$P_{1}(k) = 1 + 0.7^{k} + 0.5^{k} + 0.2^{k};$$

$$P_{5}(k) = 1 + 0.5^{k}.$$
(14.13)

EAGE 254



Pig. 14.1.

Page 141.

Let us note that from preset rive functions two  $P_2$  and  $P_4$ ) are converted into zero not only when k=1, but also with k=1, i.e., the second and fourth purposes possess considerably smaller, in comparison with the first, the third and the fifth, by vulnerability: to these targets for us it is necessary to select no less than on the basis of two projectiles:

$$h_2 \geqslant 2.$$
  $h_4 \geqslant 2.$  (14.14)

Let us pass from functions (14.13) to the rew functions

$$v_i(k) = |\ln P_i(k)|$$
  $(i = 1, 2, ..., 5)$  (14.15)

and for simplification in rulther calculations let us make table the values of all functions  $v_i(k)$  (see Table 14.1).



Plotted function  $v_i(k)$   $(i=1,\ldots,5)$  they are represented in Fig. 14.2. Since functions are determined only milking the integer values of argument k, then lines Fig. 14.2 shows curves, but by broken lines.

Process of planning/graming let us develop on the standard diagram. As the value, which characterizes the issue of the issue of the issue points, we will examine humber  $n_i$  of the projectiles, which remained at our disposal arter the extraction of means to the i-th target.

1. We fix/record issue of Louith step/pitch n. - number of projectiles, which remained at our disposal after extraction of projectiles to first four purposes. Let us determine the borders in which it can be located by n. To rifth target it is necessary to leave not less than one projectile:

 $n_4 \geqslant 1$ .

Fable 14.1.

*	v, (k)	U2 (A)	U <sub>1</sub> (ह)	v <sub>4</sub> (k)	छ । देश
0	20	∞	ro	in	n
1	0.223	$\sim$	0,105	.77	0,693
2	0.041	1.139	0.010	1,204	0.28
2 3	0.008	0.552	0.001	0,616	0.13
4	0,002	0.298	0.000	0.358	0.065
5 6	0,000	0.169	0.000	0.222	0.03.
6	0,000	0.098	0,000	0.143	0.016
7	0,000	0.058	0.000	0.094	0.008
8	0,000	0.034	0,000	0.063	0.003
9	0,000	0.020	0.000	0.043	0.00
10	0,000	0.012	0.000	0.0.0	0.001

PAGE 254

DOC = 80151508

Page 142.

On the first four targets were released not less 1+2+1+2=6 projectiles, remained not move that four. Thus,

$$1 < n_4 \le 4$$
.

It is obvious, optimum control on the fifth step/pitch lies in the fact that all remaining  $n_*$  projectiles to isolate into the fifth purpose:  $k_5^*(n_i) = n_i. \tag{14.16}$ 

In this case the value of criterion V, reached at the fifth step/pitch, is converted into the minimum and it is equal

$$V_5^{\bullet}(n_4) = v_5(n_4). \tag{14.17}$$

This value for any value of  $u_*$  can be found from the latter/last column of Table 14.1. Let us register in new table 14.2 conditional optimum control on the fifth step/picca  $k_s*(n_*)$  and value of criterion  $V_s*(n_*)$ , reacted as thus control at the fifth step/pitch.

Table 14.2 is contained by the cask of optimization at the fifth step/pitch. Let us note that neve it loss not have sense to construct graphs, since the possible values of argument n<sub>4</sub> integral and there are faw of them.

DOC = 80151508 FAGE 257

2. Let us set  $n_3$  - number of projectiles, which remained after extraction of resources to three purposes.

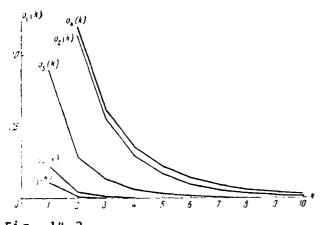


Fig. 14.2.

Page 143.

Let us determine the boundaries at which lies/rests n<sub>3</sub>. To the remaining two targets - fourth and the rifth - it is necessary to reserve not less than three projectiles, hence

$$n_3 \geqslant 3$$
;

on the other hand, to the rist tures purposes is spent not less 1+2+1=4 projectiles; remained not more than six. Thus,  $3 \le n_3 \le 6$ .

According to standard procedure to us is necessary with each of the possible values of  $r_3$  to similar "prize"  $V_{4,5}^+$  for the latter/last two steps/pitches during any control at the next-to-last step/pitch and optimum control on the latter:

$$V_{4,5}^+(n_3, k_4) = v_4(k_4) + V_5^*(n_4),$$

DOC = 80151508 FAGE 259

or, taking into account that  $n_4=n_3-k_4$ ,

$$V_{4,5}^{+}(n_3, k_4) = v_4(k_1) + V_5^{*}(n_3 - k_1).$$
 (14.18)

The conditional oftimum prize  $V_{1,5}(n_3)$  and conditional oftimum equation k.\*(n.) they will to iccared from the condition

$$V_{4,5}^{*}(n_3) = \min_{k} \{ V_{4,5}^{k}(n_3, k_4) \}, \tag{14.19}$$

where the minimum is taken in terms of all values of a number of chosen projectiles k., permitted with this D3.

Jsing data of Tables 14.1 and 14.2 (into the latter it is necessary to enter with n3-k. Lusceal of n.) let us make table from two inputs for function (14.1d) (see Table 14.3).

The drawn a line graphs/counts Faule 14.3 correspond to the impossible, with this r3, values A4. In each table row is emphasized minimum value.

000 = 30151508

Table 14.2.

۸,	k, (n,)	$V_{\bullet}^{\bullet}(n_{i})$	
1 2 3	1 2 3 4	0,693 0,288 0,134 0,065	

Page 144.

It equally  $V_{4,5}^*(n_3)$  determines committee optimum control at the fourth step/pitch  $k_4*(r_3)$ , Let us reduce these data in Table 14.3.

Table 14.4 solves completely the problem of the optimization of the fourth step/pitch.

3. We optimize third step/ploth. We are assigned by values of  $n_2$  for which we define the boundaries. For the first two steps/pitches is spant not less than three projectiles; remained not more than seven.

not lass than four projections; commandently,

$$4 - n_2 - 7$$

We construct table with two imput of the values of the function  $V^*_{0,3,5}(n_2,k_3)=v_3(k_3)+V^*_{0,5}(n_2+k_3) \quad (14.20)$ 

FAGE 241

(Table 14.5) and we seek in each line of this table sinings runber:

$$V_{3,4,5}^{\bullet}(n_2) = \min_{k_1} \{V_{3,4,5}^{+}(n_2, k_3)\}. \tag{14.21}$$

Table 14.3.

	7,	2		3	4	;
į	3	1.897	i		· _ '	_
	ţ	1,492		1,309	-	;
	5	1 338	·	0.904	1,061	- 1
	6	iou		0,750	0.646	0,915

Table 14.4.

1	л,	k <sub>4</sub> (n <sub>3</sub> )	V <sub>4,5</sub> (n <sub>3</sub> )
	} 4 5 6	3 3 4	1,897 1,309 0,004 0,646

Page 145.

We stress in each to what a winimum number, find  $k_3*(n_2)$  and  $V_3$ , 4, 5 ( $n_2$ ) and we write/record them in Table 14.6.

The optimization of the third stap/fitch by these is exhausted.

de analogously optimize the second step/pitch. we find the borders of values n:  $6 \leqslant n_1 \leqslant 9$ .

We construct table with two imput of the values of the function  $V_{2,3,4,5}^{4}(n_1, k_2) = v_2(k_2) + V_{3,4,5}^{*}(n_1 - k_2)$  (14.22) (see Table 14.7).

DOC = 30151508 FAGE 263

In each line of this vaule se find the minimum number:

$$V_{2,3,4,5}^{\bullet}(n_1) = \min_{k} \{V_{2,3,4,5}^{(k)}(n_1, k_2)\}. \tag{14.23}$$

 $V_{2,3,4,5}^*(n_1)=\min_{k_1}\big\{V_{2,3,4,5}^+(n_1,\ k_2)\big\}. \tag{14.23}$  de further construct caule for optimization of the second step/pitch (Table 14.8).

Table 14.5.

11 19	ì	Į.	3	•
4	2,002	_	_	-
5 6	1,314	1,9 <b>07</b> 1,319	1,398	!
7	0.751	0,914	1,310	1,897

Table 14.6.

72	$k_3^{\bullet}(n_2)$	V <sub>3, 4, 5</sub> (n <sub>2</sub> )
4 5 6	1 1	2,002 1,414 1,009 0,751

Page 146.

+. We optimize first step/r ton; value  $n_0=10$  preset and is not varied; therefore simply we seek managing of  $k_1$  of function

$$V_{1,2,3,4,5}^{\perp}(10, k_1) = v_1(k_1) + V_{2,3,4,5}^{*}(10 - k_1), \quad (14.24)$$

being absolute minimum of criterion V:

$$V^* = V_{1, 2, 3, 4, 5}^* = \min_{\mathbf{k}_1} \{ V_{1, 2, 3, 4, 5}^* (10, \mathbf{k}_1) \}. \quad (14.25)$$

The values of function (14.24) are given in table 14.9.

smallest of numbers in rapid 14.9 is equal

$$V' = V'_{1,2,3,3,3} = 1.784$$

and it is achieved by citimum scallol at the first step/pitch

$$k_1^{\bullet} = 1$$
.

Table 14.7.

43	2	1	1	;
6 7	$\frac{3.141}{2.553}$	 2,554	_	-
. s 9	2.148 1.890	$\frac{1.966}{1.561}$	2,300 1,712	2,171
9	1,800	<u>1.561</u>	1.712	2.17

Table 14.8.

71	$F_2^*(n_1)$	$V_{2, 3, 4, 5}^{*}(n_{1})$
6	2	3,141
7	2	2,553
8	3	1,966
9	3	1,561

Table 14.9

<b>\$</b> ,	į	1	2	. :	. 1
	- '-			·	·
V * (10, 4	Οİ	1,784	2007	. 2,561	3.443
				`	·

Page 147.

In this case probability # or the destruction of all targets reaches its maximum:  $W^* = e^{-V^*} \approx 0.168$ .

5. Passing again ertire sequence of stages from beginning toward the end, we find unconditional Optimum control on each step/pitch, beginning from the first:

$$k_1^* = 1$$
;  $n_1^* = 10 - k_1^* = 9$ .

included in Table 14.8 with a =>, se find

$$k_2^* = k_2^*(9) = 3; \quad V_{2, 3, 4, 5}^* = 1.561.$$

Further we have

$$n_2^* = 9 - 3 = 6.$$

EAGE 266

DOC = 80151508

included in Table 14.6 with 42=0, let us find

$$k_3 = k_3(6) = 1$$
;  $V_{3,4,5} = 1.009$ .

Further

$$n_3^* = 6 - 1 = 5$$
;

from Table 14.4 it has

$$k_4^{\bullet} = k_4^{\bullet}(5) = 3; \quad V_{4,5}^{\bullet} = 0.904.$$

Further,

$$n_{\bullet}^{\bullet} = 5 - 3 = 2$$
;

from Table 14.2

$$k_5 = k_5(2) = 2$$
;  $V_5 = 0.288$ .

Thus, optimum control is round:

$$U^* = (1, 3, 1, 3, 2).$$

i.e., for achievement of the maximum kill probability of all targets which is necessary to isolate into the first and by third of target on one projectile, to the second and fourth purposes - on three projectiles, and the remaining two projectiles to isolate into the fifth purpose.

For the construction of trajectory in the phase space it is necessary to still compute values  $v_i^*$  (i=1, 2, 3, 4, 5) the "gains" ["prizes"], reached in the single stages at the optimum control.

Page 148.

FAGE 267

DOC = 30151508

## #e bave:

$$v_1 = V_{1,2,3,3,5} - V_{2,3,4,5} = 1.784 - 1.561 = 0.223;$$
 $v_1 = V_{2,3,4,5} - V_{3,4,5} = 1.561 - 1.009 = 0.552;$ 
 $v_2 = V_{3,4,5} - V_{4,5} = 1.009 - 0.904 = 0.105;$ 
 $v_3 = V_{4,5} - V_5 = 0.904 - 0.288 = 0.616;$ 
 $v_4 = V_5 = 0.288.$ 

The optimum trajectory or point S in the phase space will appear, as shown in Fig. 14.3.

Let us note that in this simmentary example is demonstrated not the most economical method of the solution of the problem: perhaps, simpler it would be solve the task of rational control not of the dynamic programming, but simple the countershaft (number of possible versions it is not too great, and ever, in the more complex problems the advantages of the method of usuamic programming become evident.

o) the distribution of Labources for increasing the reliability of technical device/equipment. Let there be the technical device/equipment A, which consists of a aggregates/units, or the assemblies

(Pig. 14.4).

$$A_1. A_2. \dots A_m$$

$$A_n A_2 A_3 A_4 A_5 A_6$$

$$A_n A_2 A_3 A_6$$

$$A_n A_2 A_4$$

$$A_n A_2 A_5$$

$$A_n A_3$$

$$A_n A_5$$

$$A_n A$$

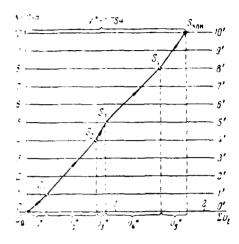


Fig. 14.3.

The failure-free operation of sach of the assemblies is necessary for the work of device/equipment A as a whole. Aggregates/units can go out of order, moreover independently or each other, the reliability (probability of failure-free operation) of entire device/equipment is equal to the product of the remaininty of the single assemblies

$$W = \prod_{i=1}^{n} \rho_i. \tag{14.26}$$

where  $p_i -$  reliability of the Lassambly.

For increasing the remaining of entire device/equipment is isolated some sum of resources 40. These resources (expressed in the money, the weights or otherwise) can be in an arbitrary manner distributed between the actions, which raise the reliability of single assemblies. In order to increase the reliability of the i

FAGE 249

DOC = 80151508

assembly from  $P_i$  to  $P>p_i$ . It is necessary to expend the sum, equal to  $f_i(P,p_i)$ .

It is necessary so to unstituute the tempered resources in order to do reliability of entire wevice/equipment of maximum.

This task, and previous, also has multiplicative criterion, on it differs from it in terms of the fact that the control carries not discrete/digital, but continuous character and consists of the extraction to each assembly (stage, of the specific sum of resources  $x_i$  (i=1, 2, ..., m). After the conversion of criterion who to the additive form the logarithmic operation before to will be the ordinary task of distributing the tesources/lifetimes with the redundancy (moreover in its simplest form when in each stage are expended/consumed to the end/lead all allocated resources), with the difference that the "income" is not maximized, but it is minimized.

Page 150.

de recommend to reader as the control to solve the task of distributing the rescurces to an increase in the reliability with following concrete/specific/actual data

$$m = 5; \ \rho_1 = 0.90; \ \rho_2 = 0.95; \ \rho_3 = 0.93;$$

$$p_4 = 0.85; \ \rho_5 = 0.97.$$

$$Z_n = 4.$$

$$f_1(P, \rho_1) = 2 \quad \left| \ln \frac{1 - P}{1 - \rho_1} \right|;$$

$$f_2(P, \rho_2) = 0.8 \left| \ln \frac{1 - P}{1 - \rho_2} \right|;$$

$$f_3(P, \rho_3) = 0.5 \left| \ln \frac{1 - P}{1 - \rho_3} \right|;$$

$$f_4(P, \rho_4) = 0.3 \left| \ln \frac{1 - P}{1 - \rho_4} \right|;$$

$$f_5(P, \rho_5) = 3 \quad \left| \ln \frac{1 - P}{1 - \rho_4} \right|;$$

All functions  $f_i(P)$  are determined only for  $P > p_i$  (i=1, ..., 5).

§15. Stochastic tasks of dynamic programming.

In practice frequently meet such tasks of the planning/glidings in which noticeable role play one landom factors, which affect both the state of system S and prize w. In such problems, the controlled process is not completely decelulated by the initial state So and the selected control U, while to a carrain degree it depends on the case. Let us agree also the task of planning/gliding to call "stochastic" (probabilistic).

certain representation about similar tasks we already obtained in §12, where was found out the optimum distribution of weapons of destruction according to the designated cargets. Depending on the case

a number of surviving to this because weapons of destruction could be the fact, etc., i.e., the state or system, in the essence, was random.

Page 151.

However, with the solution of this problem we were founded to the examination only of the average/mean characteristics of process, i.e., they solved its not as stochastic, but as ordinary problem of dynamic programming.

This method, which is reduced to the fact that the random process previously, even before the solution of task, is replaced by its averaged, not random, determined model, is approximate and will use far not always. It gives rain results only in those tasks of which the controlled system consists of the sufficiently multiple objects (as in §12: aircraft, instituments), and despite the fact that the state of each of them values randomly, in the mass these randomness mutually are liquicated, they are levelled.

In many stochastic tasks of planning/gliding this method cannot be used; into some it gives too great arrors, in others and it is completely impossible. And, in any case, does always arise the question: strongly whether will be changed optimum control, if we

disrajard/neglect randcaness and to replace stochastic task of that determined? In order to answer this question, it is necessary to be able to solve stochastic property of dynamic programming taking into account random factors.

In the present paragraph we will jive fundamental approach to such tasks and let us plan yeneral/common/total cutline of the sclution. In the following wie will in detail dismantle/select a specific example.

The general/common/total columniation stochastic problem of dynamic programming can be assessued as follows.

Let there be the physical system s, which in the course of time varies its state. We can to a certain degree act on this process, directing him to the desired side, but we monitor this process not completely, since its course, pessues the control, depends also on the casa. This process we want care the "random controlled process".

Let us assume that with the course of the process is connected our some interest, which is expressed by criterion ("prize") W, which to us it is desirable to become maximum.

Page 152.

DOC = 80151508 FAGE 223

Criterion W is additive:

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \mathbf{w}_{i}, \tag{15.1}$$

where where the "gain", acquired in the 1 stage of process.

since the state of system 5 is by chance, then random proves to be gain  $w_i$  in each stage, and rotal gain W.

We would like to select such control U, during which prize W would be converted into the maximum. But can we this do? it is obvious, no: during our any control prize W will remain random. However, we can select such control juring which the average/mean value of the random prize a slil be maximum. Let us designate the average/mean value (mathematical expectation) of value W by the letter 7:  $\overline{V} = M [W].$ (15.2)

Taking into account formula (15.1) and using the property of mathematical expectations, let us register a in the form

$$\overline{W} = \sum_{l=1}^{m} \overline{w}_{l}. \tag{15.3}$$

 $\overline{x}$  - average/sean prize in the 1 stage.

FOOTNOTE 1. The mathematical expectacion of sum of random variables is equal to the sum of their marnematical expectations. ENDFCOTNOTE. DOC = 80151508 FAGE 274

Thus, in stochastic tasks instead of the criterion itself W which is accidental, is examined ats average/rean value W; this criterion is also additive.

The task of dynamic programming is reduced to the following: to select this optimum control  $u^*$ , which consists of optimum controls  $U_1^*, U_2^*, \ldots, U_n^*$  on the single stayes so that the additive criterion W would become maximum.

It would seem, matter is reduced to the simple replacement of criterion; however this not thus. The difference between stochastic and determined diagrams of undamed programming is much deeper: it concerns the very structure or optimum control.

Actually/really, let is recall the overall diagram of dynamic programming in the determined processes, without the participation of randomness (§7). It consists or the following.

Page 153.

Is fixed/recorded the state or system  $S_{i-1}$  afterward (i-1)-th step/pitch, and for each or such states is sought conditional optimum

control at the i step/pitch. In this case the state of system after i step/pitch  $S_i$  is completely determined by previous state  $S_{i-1}$  and used at the i step/pitch control  $U_i$ :

$$S_i = S_i(S_{i-1}, U_i). \tag{15.4}$$

Equally prize  $w_i$  at the iscap/price is completely datermined by the state of system  $S_{i-1}$  in the megalining of this step/pitch and by used control  $U_i$ :  $w_i = w_i(S_{i-1}, \ U_i). \tag{15.5}$ 

so whether this will be in secondatic tasks? No, not thus. The state of system  $S_i$  after the 1 step/pitch is not completely determined by state  $S_{i+1}$  and control  $U_i$ , but it depends also on the case. State  $S_i$  with given ones  $S_{i+1}$  and  $U_i$  is random, and on given ones  $S_{i+1}$  and  $U_i$  depends only probability distribution for different versions of state  $S_i$ .

Jain  $w_i$  at the i step/pitch is not also completely determined by the previous state of system  $S_{i-1}$  and by used control  $U_i$ , but it is random variable, and or  $S_{i-1}$  and  $U_i$  depends only probability distribution between its possible values. But that as us interests not random gain itself  $w_i$ , but only its average/mean value at each step/pitch, this random variable it is possible to average taking into account probability distribution and to introduce into the examination conditional mean prize at the i step/pitch in preset state  $S_{i-1}$  after (i-1)-th step/pitch and the specific control at i

DOC = 30151508 FAGE 276

step/pitch Up  $\widetilde{\boldsymbol{x}}_{i}(\mathcal{S}_{i-1}, U_{i}).$ (15.6)

We will assume that DOTA THE PRODUCTION distribution for random state  $S_i$ , and conditional mean yall (15.6) they depend only or  $S_{i-1}$ and  $U_i$  do not depend on the "premistory" of process, i.e., from that how, when and as a result or waar control system arrived into the state  $S_{i-1}$  1.

FOOTNOTE 1. In other words, and controlled process has Markov character. ENDFCCTNOTE.

Page 154.

By our task will determine for each of the possible random issues any step/pitch conditachal optimum control at the following step/pitch. Thus, in stcchastic diagram optimum control itself U\* will be random and will be each time realized differently, depending on that how will be developed random process. The matter of that planning/gliding - on to work out the wired program of control, and to inlicate for each step/picon the control which one should answer any random issue of the pravious step/pitch.

In this - the basic difference perveen the determined and stochastic tasks of dynamic groysamming. In the determined task

optimum control is single and as andicated previously as the wired program of action. In stochastic task optimum control is random and is chosen in the course of process it self depending on the randomly established situation. This is - control with the "feedback" from the actual state of system to the control.

Let us pay attention to car more sircumstance. In the determined diagram, passing process in stayes from the end/lead at the beginning, we on each stage also round a whole series of conditional optimum controls, but of these are controls in the final analysis was realized only one. In stochastic diagram is not thus. Each of the conditional optimum controls can prove to be actually realizable, if the previous course of random process puts system into the appropriate state.

But how to find conditional optimum control  $U_i(S_{i+1})$  on the i step/pitch of stochastic process? This is - such control which, being used at the i step/pitch, ucawarus into the maximum conditional mean prize at all subsequent stage/pircules: from the i-th to the s-th inclusively. Bow to find this maximum? In perfect analogy how we made in the determined diagram, which the liftfarence that instead of the prize itself which was accluental, is examined its average/mean value.

Page 155.

the process of planning/grading, as always, is turned/run up, baginning from the latter/last (m-th) step/pitch. Is fixed/recorded the state of system  $S_{m-1}$  arter (m-1)-to step/pitch, and under this condition is sought the contact  $U_m^*(S_{m-1})$ , which converts into the maximum average/mean conditional prize  $\overline{w}_m(S_{m-1})$  at the m step/pitch:

$$\overline{\boldsymbol{W}}_{m}^{*}(\boldsymbol{S}_{m-1}) = \max_{\boldsymbol{U}} \left\{ \overline{\boldsymbol{w}}_{m}(\boldsymbol{S}_{m-1}, \boldsymbol{U}_{m}) \right\}. \tag{15.7}$$

when is found dependence  $U_m(S_{m-1})$  and  $\widetilde{W}_m(S_{m-1})$  on  $S_{m-1}$  the optimization of latter/last star/ritch is completed. In whatever state  $S_{m-1}$  randowly arrived the system after m-1 steps/pitches, we already know that to us to make further and what maximum average/mean prize we will obtain at the latter/last step/pitch.

Then is optimized  $(m-1)-t_{n}$  step/pitch. Here matter proceeds so not simply. Let us first flx state  $S_{m-2}$  after m-2 steps/pitches and will find average/mean prize  $\widehat{W}_{m-1,m}^*(S_{m-2},U_{m-1})$  on two latter/last steps/pitches during any control  $U_{m-1}$  at (m-1)-th step/pitch and during the optimum control on the latter which to us it is already known. Now to find this average/mean prize? We will discuss as follows. During any preset  $S_{m-2}$  and control  $U_{m-1}$  state  $S_{m-1}$  will be random, but we know for it the probability distribution, which depends on  $S_{m-2}$  and  $U_{m-1}$ . Random state  $S_{m-1}$  determines by itself maximum average/mean occurred at prize at m step/pitch  $\widehat{W}_m^*(S_{m-1})$ :

DOC = 80 15 1508

average this value taking into account the probability distribution of state  $S_{m-1}$ . We will obtain the "twice averaged" maximum conditional prize at the m step/patch, which depends no longer on  $S_{m-1}$  (on it is done the second averaging), but on  $S_{m-2}$  and  $U_{m-1}$ . Let us designate this prize

$$\overline{W}_{m}^{*}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}).$$
 (15.8)

Fo it it is necessary to aujoin average/mean conditional gain at (m-1)-th step/pitch during centrol  $U_{m-1}$  at this stap/pitch:

$$\overline{w}_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1});$$
 (15.9)

we will obtain

$$\overline{W}_{m-1, m}^{+}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}) = = \overline{w}_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}) + \overline{\overline{W}}_{m}^{+}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}).$$
(15.10)

Page 156.

Let us find the central on (m-1) -th step/pitch with which value (15.10) is converted into the maximum:

$$\begin{aligned} W_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(S_{m-2}) &= \max_{U_{m-1}} \left\{ W_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}) \right\} = \\ &= \max_{U_{m-1}} \left\{ \overline{w}_{m-1}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}) + \overline{W}^{\bullet}(S_{m-2}, U_{m-1}) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$
(15.11)

Let us designate this Conditional optimum control  $U_{m-1}(S_{m-2})$ . Thus, as a result of optimization of (n-1)-th step/pitch are found conditional optimum control  $U_{m-1}(S_{m-2})$  and corresponding to it maximum average/mean conditional prize on two latter/last steps/pitches  $W_{m-1,m}(S_{m-2})$ .

Analogously is crtimized and I step/pitch. For each issue of i step/pitch  $S_i$  is already known conditional maximum average/mean prize at the subsequent steps/pitches:

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{W}}_{i+1,\ldots,m}^{\bullet}(S_i). \tag{15.12}$$

Since state  $S_i$  is random and its distribution depends on  $S_{i-1}$  and  $U_i$ , then it is possible Landom gain (15.12) to average taking into account probability distribution  $S_i$  and to obtain the "twice averaged" gain  $\overline{W}_{(S_i),\ldots,m}(S_{i-1},U_i)$ .

After forming it with the average/mean prize at the i step/pitch during any control  $C_{ij}$  we will obtain

$$V^{*}(S_{i-1}, W_{i}) =$$

$$= \tilde{w}_{i}(S_{i-1}, U_{i}) + \tilde{W}^{*}_{i+1, \dots, m}(S_{i-1}, U_{i}). \quad (15.13)$$

Random optimum centrel on a ster/paten  $U_i^*(S_{i-1})$  will be located as the control during which value (45.15) reaches the maximum:

$$||\hat{W}_{i_{i+1},\dots,m}^{*}(S_{i-1})| = \max_{U_{i}} ||\hat{W}_{i_{i+1},\dots,m}^{*}(S_{i-1}, U_{i})|| = \max_{U_{i}} ||\hat{w}_{i}(S_{i-1}, U_{i})| + ||\hat{W}_{i-1},\dots,m}^{*}(S_{i-1}, U_{i})||_{L^{\infty}},$$
(15.14)

Applying formula (15.14, consecutively/serially at each step/pitch, let us find conditional prize on an atter/pitches of process to the second inclusively.

FAGE 281

DOC = 30151508

Page 157.

The optimization of the first step/pitch has some special features/peculiarities, connected with the fact that the initial state  $S_0$ , as a rule, random is not and it must not be varied taking into account probability distribution.

FOOTNOTE 1. For simplicity  $c_{\star}$  presentation we take only that case when  $s_0$  in the accuracy known. Earl FOOTNOTE.

Since  $S_0$  is not by chance, then not random (completely determined) will be the optimum control  $u*_1$  and  $u*_1$  and  $u*_2$  are account this stage will be

$$\overline{W}^{\bullet} = \overline{\overline{W}}_{1,2}^{\bullet} \qquad (15.15)$$

Thus, the process of aymanic programming is completed; is found the optimum control

$$U^{\bullet} = (U_1^{\bullet}, \ U_2^{\bullet}(S_1), \ U_1^{\bullet}(S_2), \ \dots, \ U_m^{\bullet}(S_{m-1})), \ (15.16)$$

all elements/cells of which, except the first, are random and depend on the state of system. Corresponding to this control maximum average/mean prize is equal to (15.15).

Recommendations regarding the use/application of this control are given in the following rorm: at the first step/pitch to apply control  $U *_1$  and to await the results of this step/pitch; on the

DOC = 80151508 FAGE 282

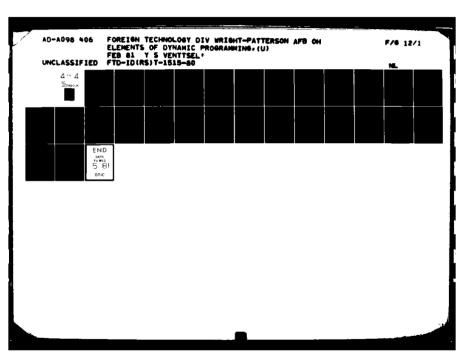
second, depending on issue  $s_1$  or the first step/pitch, to choose the optimum control  $U*_2(S_1)$  and so roth.

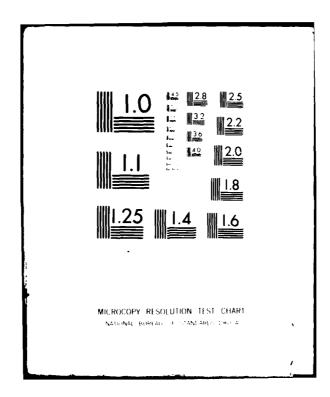
Page 158.

§16. Example stochastic task or the lynamic programming: the combined fire control and of exploration.

Let us consider an elamentar, example stochastic task of dynamic programming.

Is produced shooting at some target is. In our disposal there are by m of projectiles; for the destruction of target it is sufficient one incidence/imp\_ngement. Snots are not depended; the hit probability into the target element and is equal to p. Each projectile has considerable cost/value, and therefore to undesirably expend projectiles for nothing, on the already affected target. We have the capability, if we wish, after each short to produce exploration (for example, to send reconnaissance aircraft) and to establish/install, is affected target or not: if it is affected, we will sease shooting and part of the projectiles will be saved. However, to too frequently send exploration is not advantageous, since this dearly is bypassed, but alread damage to target in this





case we will not plot. Arises the question about the reasonable control of the process of the ucmmariment of target and reconnaissance operations.

It is obvious, the solution must depend on cost of projectile, the cost/value of exploration, and also from the value of target. Let the cost/value of projective s; tam post/value of one exploration r; in the case of the destruction of target we obtain the "premium" of A (expressing, for example, by the cost/value of target itself, either by the cost/value of the reducing work of the opponent, or finally by our material damage which it was possible to prevent, after striking target). Our task - of planting beneficiant and exploration so as to become maximum pure/clean "income" from the entire operation ("incomes" from the expenditures of projectiles and send operation of prospectors it goes without saying are considered negative). To select optimum control - this means to indicate, when (after what in order of firings) it is necessary to send exploration and when to cease shooting.

The physical system, which we manage, consists of the informational component/link (prospector) and weapons of destruction (projectiles). The process, which takes place in the system, is the random controlled process, and the task of optimization must be solved on stochastic diagram. Calcerion is average/mean minocme. W

DOC = 80151509 FAGE 285

from the entire series of measures (shooting, exploration).

In this example we deal concerning the discrete/digital random controlled controlled process in course of which system S irregularlyly passes of one state to another. Let us determine the possible states of system as follows.

Page 159.

We will indicate that system 5 is in state  $S^{(k)}$   $(0 < k \le m-1)$ , if shooting at the target is not yet completed, but from the moment/torque of obtaining the latter/last intermetton about the target is produced exactly k of shots 1.

FOOTNOTE 1. Let us note that the information about the target can consist only of the fact that the "target is not affected", since otherwise shooting would be immediately ended. ENDFCOTNOTE.

For example, "state  $S^{(0)}$ " at indicates: is recently produced the exploration, which discovered that the target is not affected, and shooting is continued. It is covered, if shooting yet was not begun, system also is in state  $S^{(0)}$ . Since addicately it is known that the target is not affected. "State  $S^{(0)}$ " when that from the moment/torque of the addission of the latter/last information about

the target, consisting in the fact that the target is not affected, are produced three shots and as not yet made decision about the curtailment of shooting.

If shooting is ended at  $a_{i,j}$  reason (are spent all projectiles, either it is discovered, that the target is already affected, or is simply accepted the solution to clease shooting), then we will indicate that the system is an scale  $S^{(m)}$ .

By letters  $S^{(a)}$  by superscripts we designate different possible states of system. One cught not to confuse them with designation  $S_{i}$ , which designates the state of system after i-th stap/pitch. In our process the number of stap/pitch will not at all coincide with the number of state.

As the phase space let us consider points  $S^{(0)}, S^{(1)}, \ldots, S^{(m-1)}, S^{(m)}$  on the axis of abscissas (Fig. 16.1).

The transition of system abouttlyly from one state into another we will represent as arrow/poincer, as shown in Fig. 16.1.

Let us divide process into the steps/pitches. Natural "step/pitch" in this case is "shot". The fact that in actuality can be carried out not all s or shots, must not confuse us: always it is

DOC = 30151509 FAGE 287

possible the afterward latter/less actually done shot to count off mentally still several fictitious ones, so that the total number of shots (real and fictitious) would be always equal to m.

DOC = 80151509 FAGE 288

Fig. 16.1.

Page 160.

"Exploration" we will not count for the single step/pitch, since the otherwise total number of steps/pitches would not be fixed/recorded. If after this shot is produced exploration, then we will carry it to the same step/pitch, as shot.

Thus, we have three variation of the steps/pitches: shot, shot with the subsequent exploration and fictitious shot.

Let us consider possible controls at each step/pitch. If system is in state  $S^{(m)}$  — shooting is already ended, then there is no selection, and the only possible (it and optimum) control will be: not to shoot. But if system is in state  $S^{(k)}$   $(0 \le k \le m-1)$ , then at our disposal there are three versions of the control:

 $U^{11}-$  to do first-order ster/pitch, i.e., to shoot and not to send exploration,

 $U^{(2)}$  — to do second-order step/pluch, i.e., to shoot and to send exploration,

 $U^{(i)}$  — to do third-order ster/place, i.a., cease shooting and to produce fictitious shot.

Let us agree to consider that if the exploration, execution at the previous step/pitch, brought information "target it was affected", then shooting immediately ceases, i.e., control  $U^{(3)}$  at the following step/pitch is rorceu.

state of system, in the phase  $S_F$  are (Fig. 16.1). The initial state of system  $S_0$  is completely determined coincides with point  $S^{(0)}$ . Final state  $S_{\text{som}}$  of point is completely determined coincides with point  $S^{(m)}$ , dowever, the intersediate positions of point S can be different, depending on the used control and success of shooting. For example, Fig. 16.2 depicts this concrete/specific/actual realization of the random process: first are done three shots without the exploration; point S irregularlyly is moved from  $S^{(0)}$  in  $S^{(0)}$ ,  $S^{(0)}$ . After the third shot is produced the exploration; it is explained that the target is not affected, and going S is returned to state  $S^{(0)}$ .

Page 161.

Then is produced four additional shots (point it is moved in  $S^{(0)}, S^{(2)}, S^{(3)}, S^{(3)}$ ), it is sent exploration, it discovers that the target is affected, and shocting ceases (point S it jumps from  $S^{(4)}$  in  $S^{(m)}$ ), after which it is continued the reading of fictitious shots, if they yet not all are spent.

dach trajectory, similal to that to recently depicted, consists of m jumps (displacements/movements) of the phase space, moreover to all fictitious shots, ficduced already in state  $S^{(m)}$ . correspond "jumps on the spot" with the relumn to the same point  $S^{(m)}$ . After each step/pitch, at which was used control  $U^{(2)}$  (shot with the subsequent exploration), point S can only elther return in  $S^{(n)}$  (if exploration it communicated: "target was not affected"), or pass in  $S^{(m)}$  (if exploration it communicated: "carget was affected", and is made the decision to cease shooting). Let us note that the solution to cease shooting to completely thoughteesing accept afterward Proceedings "target it is not affected", since, keeping in find to cease shooting with any report of exploration, it would be not more reasonably completely send it and not produce the senseless expenditures r.

defore us will cost the task - of selecting optimum control at each step/pitch, i.e., to limitate, which of three controls

U<sup>(1)</sup>. U<sup>(2)</sup>. U<sup>(3)</sup> must be applied at this step/pitch depending on the issue of the previous step/pitch. It is obvious, optimum control must depend on the parameters of the problem: number of projectiles m, hit probability p, cost/value of projectile s, cost/value of exploration r and the "premium" of A. Let us note that with some relationships/ratios of the parameters the problem is solved trivially.

FAGE 282

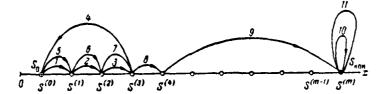


Fig. 16.2.

Page 162.

For example, if s>pA, i.e., the mean cost/value of one projectile is more than average/mean profile, such it yields with one shot, to shoot not at all has sense, i.e., at all steps/pitches it is necessary to apply central  $U^{(3)}$ . It i>A or r>ms, then it has sense to produce exploration and central  $U^{(2)}$  must not be applied not at one step/pitch.

Let us consider the general case (at any values of the parameters) and will construct the diagram of the solution of problem by the method of dynamic programming.

Pirst of all let us establish/install, from what states into what passes the system under the effect of specific controls  $U^{(1)}$ .  $U^{(2)}$ .  $U^{(3)}$  and what in this case it is obtained average/mean prize.

From the state  $S^{(m)}$  the system cannot pass anywhere else: single

PAGE 293

DOC = 80151509

possible (it and optimum) control is  $U^{(3)}$ ; prize  $w_i$  (and it goes without saying average/sean  $_{\mathcal{C}}$  =1.26

 $\bar{\boldsymbol{w}}_{i}$ ) in

this case at any i-th step/plus is equal to zero:

$$\bar{\mathbf{w}}_{l}(S^{(m)}) = \mathbf{w}_{l}(S^{(m)}) = 0.$$
 (16.1)

If system is in state  $S^{(k)}$   $(0 \le k \le m-1)$ , its further behavior and prize at i-th step/pitch depend on control.

Let us assume that is used control  $U^{(i)}$  (shot without the exploration). System passes area  $S^{(k)}$  to following in order state  $S^{(k+1)}$ , unless ended all projectiles; if on the next shot ended projectiles, system passes into state  $S^{(m)}$ .

The prize, which we in this case will obtain, does not depend on that, passed system in  $S^{(k+1)}$  or in  $S^{(m)}$ . It consists of two components/terms/addends: not random and random. Not random component/term/addend is negative and is equal - s (we for sure lose with the shot the cost/value or projectile). Fandom component/term/addend is positively and the premium which we on this shot can obtain, but we can and not potain. Premium will be obtained at this step/pitch, if the corresponding shot proves to be successful, will strike target. Let us find the probability of this event.

Page 163.

so that the target would be affected by the data by shot, it is necessary, in the first place, so that it would not be affected by previous k by the shots, released since would be obtained information "target it was not affected"; rurrhermore, it must be affected by the precisely this shot. The promability of this set of events is equal to

$$(1-\rho)^k \rho$$
.

With this probability this shot will bring to us "income" in the form of premium A: with probability  $1-(1-p)^kp$  it will not bring to us income, i.e., will bring "income". Average value A and 0 taking into account their probabilities; we will obtain average/mean income from this shot

$$A(1-p)^k p + 0 \cdot [1-(1-p)^k p] = A(1-p)^k p.$$

Subtracting from it the cost/value of projectile s, we will obtain the full/total/complete average/mean prize, acquired on one i-th step/pitch in the initial state of system  $S^{(k)}$  and control  $U^{(1)}$ :

$$\overline{w_l}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}) = A(1-p)^k p - s.$$
 (16.2)

Let us assume now that to the system, which is found in state  $S^{(k)}$  is used control  $U^{(2)}$  (show when the exploration). Further fate of system depends on what information it will communicate exploration. If this information will be "taryet affected", then system will pass into state  $S^{(0)}$ : if "target is affected", then system will pass into

state  $S^{(m)}$ . Probability of filst of these events is equal  $(1-p)^{k+1}$ ; of the second  $1-(1-p)^{k+1}$ .

Let us count average/ween rile during the use/application of control  $U^{(2)}$ . It is composed of the reliable expenditure/consumption (cost/value of projectile and exploration), equal - (s+r), and the average/mean income, equal to  $A(1-p)^kp$ : altogether

$$\overline{w}_{l}(S^{(k)}, U^{(2)}) = A(1-\rho)^{k}\rho - (s+r).$$
 (16.3)

Let us assume that to the system, which is found in state  $S^{(k)}$ , is used control  $U^{(3)}$  (sheeting it is ended). Point S will have in  $S^{(m)}$  and prize (both actual and average/weem) will be equal to zero:

$$\overline{w}_i(S^{(k)}, U^{(3)}) = 0.$$
 (16.4)

Page 164.

delying on these data, we want construct the process of the optimization of control. Let us begin with m-th step/pitch. Let afterward (m-1) step/fitch the system be in state  $S_{m-1}$  (it is not necessary to mix this state with point  $S^{(m-1)}$ !). There can be two cases: either we have already been round at point  $S^{(m)}$  (shocting it is ended):

$$S_{m-1}=S^{(m)}.$$

or shooting is not yet ended, and then we can be found in any from the remaining points:

$$S_{m-1} = S^{(k)}$$
 (0 (k \ m-1).

000 = 80151509

In the first case the only possible (and, obviously, optimum) will be control  $U^{(3)}$ :

$$U_m^*(S^{(m)}) = U^{(3)}. (16.5)$$

In the second case possibly  $cnr_1$  of two controls:  $U^{(i)}$  and  $U^{(i)}$  (since to send exploration after ratter/rast snot no longer has a sense). Let us find average/mean prize on the latter/last step/pitch for each of these controls. If we will use control  $U^{(i)}$  (shot without the exploration), then average/mean prize at m-th step/pitch will be (see formula (16.2))

$$\overline{w}_{m}(S^{(t)}, U^{(t)}) = A(1-p)^{k}p - s \quad (k = 0, 1, \dots, m-1).$$
(16.6)

If we will use control  $U^{(3)}$  (Las us case shooting), then average/mean prize at m-th step/pitch will us

$$\vec{w}_m(S^{(k)}, U^{(3)}) = 0.$$
 (16.7)

Conditional optimum control at a-th step/pitch  $U_m^*(S^{(k)})$  will be that with which this average/sean prize reaches the maximum:

$$\overline{W}_{m}^{*}(S^{(k)}) = \max\{A(1-p)^{k}p - s; 0\}.$$
 (16.8)

Thus, if

$$A(1-p)^{k}p-s>0$$
.

then it is necessary to choose at m-th suspypitch control  $U^{(1)}_{\cdot}$  but if

$$A(1-p)^k p - s < 0.$$

- control  $U^{(3)}.$  The optimization of latter/last step/pitch is complated.

Page 165.

Let us switch over to  $o_F$  that zation (m-1) of step/pitch. Let after and (m-2) step/pitch that system we in state  $S_{m-2}$ . Here again there can be two cases: either shouting is ended, i.e.

$$S_{m-2}=S^{(m)}.$$

cr it is not yet ended:

$$S_{m-2} = S^{(k)}$$
  $(0 < k < m-2).$ 

If  $S_{m-2}=S^{(m)}$ , again the only possible control is  $U^{(3)}$ , and maximum average/mean prize at the label/last steps/pitches is equal to zero:

$$U_{m-1}^{\bullet}(S^{(m)}) = U^{(3)}; \quad \overline{W}_{m-1, m}^{\bullet}(S^{(m)}) = 0. \quad (16.9)$$

Let us find conditional optimum control and conditional maximum average/mean prize on two latter/last steps/pitches when  $S_{m-2} = S^{(k)} \ (k \neq m)$ . For this let us constant average/mean conditional prize  $\overline{W}_{m-1,m}^{-}$  at two latter/last steps/pitches during any control at (m-1) the step/pitch and optimum control at m-th step/pitch. Let us look, in that is converted this prize during controls  $U^{(1)}U^{(2)}$ ,  $U^{(3)}$  at (m-1) the step/pitch, and let us select among these three values great.

de know that the system arcel m-2 steps/pitches is in state  $S^{(k)}$ . Let us use to it to (m-1) step courtal  $U^{(1)}$ . In this case is uniquely determined the state of the system acturated (m-1) of the step/pitch:

$$S_{m-1} = S^{(k+1)}$$
.

and average/mean prize at (m-1) the stap/pitch will be determined by

FAGE 288

DOC = 80151509

formula (16.2). Therefore we can immediately write the expression

$$\overline{W}_{m-1, m}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}) = = \overline{w}_{m-1}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}) + \overline{W}_{m}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}) = | . 
= A(1-p)^{k}p - s + \overline{W}_{m}(S^{(k+1)}).$$
(16.10)

Pags 166.

Let us assume that is a place control  $U^{(2)}$ . Prize  $W_{m-1,m}^+$  will be composed of prize  $\overline{w}_{m-1}$  at (m-1) the stap/pitch (see formula  $\{16.3\}$ ) and twice averaged maximum palze at latter/last stap/pitch  $\overline{W}_m^+$ . It we will find as follows. In preset scate  $S^{(k)}$  afterward (r-2) step/pitch and furing control  $U^{(2)}$  the system with probability  $(1-p)^{k+1}$  will pass into state  $S^{(0)}$ , and then maximum average/mean prize at the latter/last step/pitch will be equal to  $\overline{W}_m^+(S^{(n)})$ ; with probability  $1-(1-p)^{k+1}$  it will pass in  $S^{(m)}$ , and then prize as the latter/last step/pitch will be equal to zero. Averaging these two prizes taking into account their probabilities, we will obtain

 $\overline{W}_{m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(2)}) = (1 - \rho)^{k+1} \overline{W}^{*}(S^{(k)})$   $W_{m-1,m}^{+}(S^{(k)}, U^{(2)}) = = A(1 - \rho)^{k} \rho - (s+r) + (1 - \rho)^{k+1} \overline{W}^{*}(S^{(n)}). (16.11)$ 

and

Finally, during control  $U^{(3)}$  at (u-1) the step/ritch average/mean prize for the latter/last two steps/picches will be equal to zero:

$$\overline{W}_{m-1,m}^{+}(S^{(k)}, U^{(3)}) = 0.$$
 (16.12)

Let us find maximum or Large values (16.10), (16.11) and (16.12):

$$\overline{W}_{m-1, m}^{*}(S^{(k)}) = \max \begin{cases}
\overline{W}_{m-1, m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}), \\
\overline{W}_{m-1, m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(2)}), \\
\overline{W}_{m-1, m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(3)})
\end{cases} = \max \begin{cases}
A(1-p)^{k}p - s + \overline{W}_{m}^{*}(S^{(k+1)}), \\
A(1-p)^{k}p - (s+r) + (1-p)^{k}\overline{W}_{m}^{*}(S^{(0)}), \\
0
\end{cases} (16.13)$$

Then from controls  $U^{(1)}$ .  $U^{(2)}$ .  $U^{(3)}$  at suith reaches this maximum, and there is optimum conditional control  $U^*_{m-1}(S^{(k)})$  at (m-1) the step/pitch.

Fage 167.

Is in perfect analogy of the law (i-th) step/fitch (1<i<=). Fixsiruem isxod (i-1) step/fitch  $S_{i-1}$ . If  $S_i = S^{(m)}$ 

the further control will be  $U^{(3)}$  and prize at all subsequent steps/pitches zero. If

$$S_{i-1} = S^{(k)} \qquad (0 \leqslant k \leqslant i-1).$$

the further behavior of system and average/mean prize depend on control. If to i-th step/pitch is used control  $U^{(1)}$ , then

$$S_i = S^{(k+1)}.$$

and

$$\overline{W}_{i, i+1, ..., m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}) = \\
= \overline{w}_{i}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}) + \overline{W}_{i+1, ..., m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(1)}) = \\
= A(1-p)^{k}p - s + \overline{W}_{i+1, ..., m}^{*}(S^{(k+1)}). (16.14)$$

Let us assume that at 1-to 6-ep/pitch toward the system, which

is found in state  $S^{(4)}(k \neq m)$  is used control  $U^{(2)}$ . Average/sean prize  $\overline{W}_{(-1,...,n)}^{(1)}$  will be  $\cos_k \cos_k a  

$$\overline{W}_{l+1,\ldots,m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(2)}) = (1-p)^{k+1} \overline{W}_{l+1,\ldots,m}^{*}(S^{(n)})$$

and

$$\overline{W}_{l, l+1, \dots, m}^{+} \left( S^{(k)}, U^{(2)} \right) = A \left( 1 - p \right)^{k} p - (s+r) + + \left( 1 - p \right)^{k+1} \overline{W}_{l+1, \dots, m}^{*} \left( S^{(n)} \right), \quad (16.15)$$

Fage 168.

Finally, if to i-th step/pitch will be used control  $U^{(1)}$ . average/seam prize at all subsequent steps/pitches will be equal to zero:

$$W_{i,i+1,...,m}^{+}(S^{(k)}, U^{(3)}) = 0.$$
 (16.16)

Let us find maxisus or expressions (16.14), (16.15), (16.16):

7

FAGE 30/

$$\widetilde{W}_{i,i+1,...,m}^{*}(S^{(k)}) = \max \begin{cases}
\widetilde{W}_{i,i+1,...,m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(i)}), \\
\widetilde{W}_{i,i+1,...,m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(2)}), \\
\widetilde{W}_{i,i+1,...,m}^{*}(S^{(k)}, U^{(3)})
\end{cases} = \max \begin{cases}
A(1-p)^{k} p - c + \widetilde{W}_{i+1,...,m}^{*}(S^{(k+1)}), \\
A(1-p)^{k} p - (c+r) + (1-p)^{k+1} \widetilde{W}_{i+1,...,m}^{*}(S^{(0)}), \\
0
\end{cases} (16.17)$$

The control  $=U^{(i)},\,U^{(2)}$  or  $=U^{(3)},\,\dots$  at each is achieved this maximum, and there is conditional optimum countrol at 1-th step/pitch  $=U^*_i(S^{(k)})$ .

The optimization of the first step/pitch is implemented on the same principle, with the directors that initial state  $S^{(0)}$  is not by chance and hypotheses about it to make not necessary.

If to the system, which is round in state  $S^{\rm m}$ , on the first step/pitch control  $U^{\rm m}$ , then it used passes into state  $S^{\rm m}$ , and average/mean prize will be

$$|\overline{W}_{1-2,\ldots,m}(S^m,|U^{(1)}) = Ap + s + \overline{W}_{2,1,\ldots,m}^*(S^{(1)}).$$
 (16.18)

If will be used  $U^{(2)}$ , then

$$\overline{W}_{1,2,\ldots,m}^{*}(S^{m}, U^{2n}) = Ap - (s+c) + (1-p) \overline{W}_{2,3}^{*} = \pi(S^{m}), \quad (16.19)$$

If will be used  $U^{n}$  then

$$\overline{W}_{1,2,\ldots,m}^{n}(S^{th}, U^{(1)}) = 0.$$
 (16.20)

Page 169.

Optious control on the Line step/pitch is found from the

PAGE 302

DOC = 80151509

condition

$$\overline{W}^{\bullet} = \overline{W}_{1, 2, ..., m}^{\bullet}(S^{(0)}) =$$

$$= \max \begin{cases}
Ap - s + \overline{W}_{2, 3, ..., m}^{\bullet}(S^{(1)}), \\
Ap - (s + r) + (1 - p) \overline{W}_{2, 3, ..., m}^{\bullet}(S^{(0)}), \\
0
\end{cases} (16.21)$$

Thus, the construction of Openmum control by random process is completed.

Let us consider a specialic example. Let m=6; p=0.2; s=1; r=0.4; A=8. Let us determine optimum control.

Let us lead the optimization of litter/last (sixth) step/pitch. If after five steps/pitches inducting is already ended  $(S^{(6)})$ , then we apply control  $U^{(3)}$  (we do not shoot) so obtain at the sixth step/pitch average/mean prize  $\overline{W}^{(6)}(S^{(6)})=0$ . It after five steps/pitches state  $S^{(k)}(0 < k < 5)$ , then the selection of optimization control is achieved/reached determined by the sign of the difference:

$$A(1-p)^k p - s;$$
 (16.22)

if it is more than zero, it is applied control  $U^{(1)}$ , if less than zero - control  $U^{(3)}$ . Let us compute the values of difference (16.22) for different values of k and its us reduce them to the table (see Table 16.1). In the same table in the lower lines let us give optimum control at sixth step/pitch  $U_6^*(S^{(k)})$  and corresponding maximum average/mean prize  $\overline{W}_5^*(S^{(k)})$ . In the latter/last chair of the same table let us place the same data for case  $S_5 = S^{(6)}$ .

FAGE 303

DOC = 80151509

Table 16.1.

•	9	l	2	3	4	3	6
$A(1-p)^{k} p - s$ $U_{6}^{*}$ $\overline{V}_{5}^{*}(S^{(k)})$	$U^{(1)}$	$U^{(1)}$		$U^{(3)}$			- U <sup>13)</sup>

Page 170.

rable 16.1 contains the full/total/complete results of the optimization of latter/last star/pitch. It is possible to formulate them as follows. If were produced already five shots and the latter/last information about the target (target is not affected) they acted recently (k=0) element for one shot to that (k=1), or for two shots (k=2), then it is necessary to produce latter/last shot, moreover without the exploration (control  $U^{(1)}$ ). But if from the time of obtaining the latter/last information about the target are already released three or more than shows, then should be ceased shooting.

Thus, our optimum behavior at the sixth step/pitch in the accuracy is defined, no matter now unfolded the events at the previous five steps/pitches.

To optimize control at the rists step/pitch we will be, using

formula (16.13) and rearing in mind that function  $\overline{W}_{i}^{*}(S^{(k)})$  with any k already is in Table 16.1. Here we had to compare not two, but three numbers, which correspond to three controls; however, since one of them corresponding to control  $U^{(3)}-$  always zero, then write out we will be only two of them. It note humbers prove to be positive, let us select the control which corresponds greater of them; if one of the numbers will be positive, another - negative, let us select the control which corresponds to positive number; if both will be negative, let us select control  $U^{(3)}$ . Baca let us reduce in Table 16.2.

The optimization of the filth scep/pitch is carried out. The output: after the fourth ster/pitch under no conditions it is not necessary to send exploration.

FAGE **305** 

DOC = 80151509

Eable 16.2.

k	0	. 1	2	3	4	6
$A(1-p)^{k}p-s+\overline{W}_{6}^{\bullet}(S^{(k+1)})$	0,88	0,30	0,02	< 0	< 0	
$A(1-p)^{k} p - (s+r) + + (1-p)^{k+1} \overline{W}_{5}^{*}(S^{(0)})$	0,68	0,26	< 0	< 0	< 0	-
$U_5^{\bullet}(S^{(k)})$	$U^{(1)}$	$U^{(1)}$	$U^{(1)}$	U <sup>(3)</sup>	$U^{(3)}$	$U^{(3)}$
$\overline{\mathcal{V}}_{5,6}^{\bullet}\left(S^{(k)}\right)$	0,88	0,30	U <sup>(1)</sup> 0.02	0	0	0

Page 171.

If the information about the target is obtained recently or for one or two shots thus far, then it is necessary to do the fifth shot (control  $U^{(0)}$ ), but if from the moment/torque of obtaining the latter/last information about the target are done three or more than shots, it is necessary to case succeing.

Let us compose analogous table for the optimization of control at the fourth step/pitch (Table 10.3).

Optimization of the fourth step/pitch it is carried out. The cutput: if after the third step/pitch system is in state  $S^{(0)}$  (are recently obtained the information about the target), then at the fourth step/pitch is equally promitable any of the controls  $U^{(1)}$ .  $U^{(2)}$ —to do a shot and to send or not to send exploration. If the information about the target is obtained for one shot or for two to

that, optimum control will  $U^{(2)}$ — us a shot and send exploration. If the information about the tanget is obtained for three shots, optimum controls  $U^{(3)}$ — to cease shooting.

The optimization of the third and second step/pitch is carried out in Tables 16.4 and 16.5.

During the optimization of the first step/pitch there is no necessity to vary the results of previous. The state of the system before the first step/pitch exists  $S^{(0)}$ . Therefore in the appropriate table there will be only one occurr, which corresponds  $S^{(0)}$  (see Table 16.6).

The process of the optimization of control is completed. Is found the optimum control: uncommutational - on the first step/pitch and conditional on all others:

$$U^{\bullet} = (U_{1}^{\bullet} = U^{(1)}, \ U_{2}^{\bullet}(S_{1}), \ U_{3}^{\bullet}(S_{2}), \ U_{4}^{\bullet}(S_{3}), \ U_{5}^{\bullet}(S_{4}), \ U_{6}^{\bullet}(S_{5})).$$

**Eable 16.3.** 

k	0	1	2	3	6
$A(1-p)^k p - s + \overline{W}_{5,6}^* (S^{(k+1)})$	0,90	0,30	0,02	< 0	-
$\begin{vmatrix} A(1-p)^{k} p - (s+r) + \\ + (1-p)^{k+1} \overline{W}_{5,6}^{*}(S^{(0)}) \end{vmatrix}$	0,90	0,34	0,07	< 0	-
	$U^{(1)} \cdot U^{(2)}$	$U^{(2)}$	$U^{(2)}$	$U^{(3)}$	$U^{(3)}$
$\overline{W}_{4, 5, 6}^{\bullet}(S^{(k)})$	0,90	0,34	0,07	0	0

Fage 172.

The corresponding average/mean prize #\*=1.08; in other words, the maximum average/mean income which we can attain, rationally combining shooting with the exploration, is equal to 1.08.

**Eable 16.4.** 

	0	1	2	6
$A(1-p)^{k}p-s+\overline{W}_{1,5,6}^{*}(S^{(k+1)})$	0,94	0,35	0.02	
$A(1-p)^{k} p - (s+r) + + (1-p)^{k+1} \overline{W}_{4, 5, 6}^{*}(S^{(0)})$	0,92	0,46	80,0	-
$U_3^*(S^{(R)})$	$U^{(1)}$	$U^{(2)}$	$II^{(2)}$	$U^{(3)}$
W, 4, 5, 6 (S(*))	0,94	0,46	80,0	0

Tabla 16.5.

	0	ı	6
$A(1-p)^{k} p - s + \overline{W}_{3,4,5,6}^{*}(S^{(k+1)})$	1,06	0,36	_
$\frac{1(1-p)^{k} p - (s+r) + }{+(1-p)^{k+1} \overline{W}_{3,4,5,6}^{*}(S^{(0)})}$	0,95	0,48	_
$U_2^{\bullet}(S^{(k)})$	$U^{(1)}$	$U^{(2)}$	$U^{(3)}$
$W_{2,3,4,5,6}^{\bullet}(S^{(k)})$	1,06	0.48	0

Table 16.6.

	0
$A(1-p)^{*} p - s + \overline{W}_{2, 3, 4, 5, 6}^{*}(S^{(*+1)})$	1,08
$A(1-p)^{k}p + (s+r) + (1-p)^{k+1} \overline{W}_{2,3,4,5,6}^{*}(S^{(0)})$ $U_{1}^{*}$	1,0 <b>5</b> U <sup>(1)</sup>
$\overline{W}^* = \overline{W}_{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6}^*$	1.08

Page 173.

Let us look how occurs and realization of optimus control.

At the first step/fitch we always apply control  $U^{(i)}$ , i.e. we make

shot and we do not send exploration. As a result of this the system passes into state  $S^{(1)}$ . In this state, as can be seen from Table 16.5, optimum control is  $U^{2}$  — to up a shot and to send exploration. If exploration communicates "target it is affected", then shooting caasas, i.e., at all strequent steps/pitches is applied control  $U^{3}$ . But if exploration communicates "target it is not affected", then system passes into state  $S^{(0)}$ . In this scate, as can be seen from Table 16.4, at the third step/pircu should be to apply control  $U^0$  (done a shot and not sent the engloration, as a result of which the system will pass into state  $S^{(1)}$ .

Being converted to Table 10.3, we find optimus control on fourth step/pitch  $U^{(2)}$  (to shoot and to send exploration). If will be reported "target it is affected", shooting ceases at the following step/pitch. If will be reported "carget it is not affected", then system passes into state  $S^{(0)}$ : from Eaule 16.2 we find optimum control cn fifth step/pitch  $U^{(i)}$  (to shoot and not to send exploration). As a result of this control the system will pass into state  $S^{(1)}$ . From Table 16.1 it is evident that in this case the optimum control at the sixth step/pitch again exists  $U^{(1)}$ .

Fig. 16.3 depicts the trajectory of point S in the phase space during the obtained optimum coatrol, constructed on the assumption that the first exploration communicated "target it was not affected", but the second - "target was affected".

EAGE #310

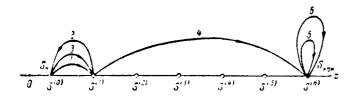


Fig. 16.3.

Page 174.

In our example it turned out that in the optimum control 0\* are included only controls  $U^{(1)}$  and  $U^{(2)}$ , and control  $U^{(3)}$  appears only in the case Proceedings "target it is affected". This will not always be thus. In other parameters of the problem control  $U^{(3)}$  can prove to be advantageous and without outsining Proceedings the "target is affected". We recommend to reduce as the exercise to find the solution of problem with the following parameters:

$$m=5; p=\frac{1}{2}; A=1; s=\frac{1}{9}; r=\frac{1}{7}.$$

Let us give for the collation the optimum control which must be obtained during the solution or this task

$$U^{\bullet} = (U^{(1)}, U^{(1)}, U^{(1)}, U^{(3)}, U^{(3)}).$$

This stochastic task proves to be in a certain sense "legenerate," since optimum control is not by chance.

FEFERENCES

DOC = 80151509 PAGE #31/

- 1. R. Bellman. Dynamic programming, IL, Moscow, 1960.
- 2. "Contemporary mathematics for auginaers". ccll. edited by E. F. Bakkenbakh, II, 1958.
- 3. Ya. S. Venttsel\*. Introduction to operations research. Publishing house "Soviet radio", 1964.
  - 4. A. A. Krasovskiy, G. S. Fospelov. Bases of automation and technical cybernetics, Fnerguizaac, A. 1., 1962.

## END

## DATE FILMED S

DTIC